



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

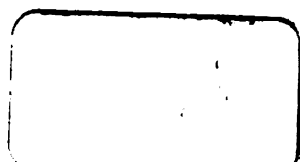
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edw T - 11/15/44

16





3 2044 097 037 451



At Mount Vernon. George Washington, Martha Washington, and her children, George and Eleanor
Christie

INTERMEDIATE HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES

By
FRANK X. SADLIER, Litt. D.



FOR USE IN THE
CATHOLIC SCHOOLS

WILLIAM H. SADLIER
NEW YORK

E.1.



To
M. M. R.

Copyright, 1915,
F. X. SADLIER

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Section I. FIRST INHABITANTS. DISCOVERY	1
“ II. EXPLORERS	20
“ III. COLONIZATION	36
“ IV. COLONIZATION (<i>continued</i>)	57
Biographies	75
Section V. COLONIAL WARS. DISCONTENT	79
“ VI. REVOLUTION	101
“ VII. END OF REVOLUTION. INDEPENDENCE	124
“ VIII. THE CONSTITUTION. SELF GOVERN- MENT	140
Biographies	157
Section IX. SECOND WAR OF INDEPENDENCE	161
“ X. EXPANSION. THE SLAVERY QUESTION	187
Biographies	206
Section XI. CIVIL WAR	209
“ XII. END OF CIVIL WAR. RECONSTRUCTION	228
Biographies	250
Section XIII. COMPLETE REUNION. INDUSTRIAL EXPANSION	253
“ XIV. THE WORLD WAR	273
“ XV. NEW PROBLEMS	303

History of the United States

SECTION I FIRST INHABITANTS. DISCOVERY

CHAPTER I THE INDIANS

1—The Indians

A few hundred years ago there were no white people in this western world where we live. The only human beings were Indians. They are so called because the discoverers of America thought they had reached India and called the native Indians. These natives have a copper-colored skin, straight black hair, dark piercing eyes, high cheek bones and beardless faces. They clothed their bodies with skins of animals and covered their feet with "moccasins" made of deer hide.

2—Their Homes

To make a hut an Indian first hacked off some long limbs of a pine tree. He used a stone hatchet because he did not know how to make iron or steel.

After trimming the twigs off the boughs, the Indian hut builder drew a moderate sized circle on the ground, put an end of each pole on the circle and then brought them all together at the top. These were bound together at the top and covered with bark or skins, making a sort of tent called a "wigwam" or "tepee." This could be easily taken down and moved. The wigwam was a common form of Indian home in the eastern part of North America.

INDIAN TRIBES

THE GREAT SOUTHERN TRIBES

The Indians of the Southern States were the most numerous and powerful of the Indian tribes of the United States.



INDIAN VILLAGES

Their houses, however, were often pitched high up in the tops of "palms" to be safe from enemies. Hence these people are called "hill people". They made pottery and wove things with.

In the Southern part of the country, in what is now New York State and Pennsylvania, some Indian tribes lived in groups of 100 or more in which several related families lived together. Many of these families together formed a clan; and, when many clans were joined together, they formed a tribe. This was usually the figure of some animal which was the symbol of the clan, and was preserved by it. The head of a clan was called a "chief". Many clans together formed a tribe.

* Each clan in each tribe of a tribe.

4—Occupations

The Indians lived by hunting and fishing. They tilled the soil somewhat, and raised corn, which they called maize. The Indians did not have horses, cattle, or sheep until the white man came. They moved from place to place in search of game, along certain paths called trails, and fished on lakes and rivers in canoes made of birch bark. In winter, in the North, they chased their game on snow shoes made of deer throngs, stretched on a frame of wood. Indians ate well in time of plenty, but kept nothing for their future needs and when game was scarce they very often starved.



Indians hunting buffalo with the bow and arrow

5—Weapons

Their weapons were the bow and arrow, the spear and the tomahawk. As they had no metal they used sharp stones or shells for points. When the white men came the Indians acquired guns and became fine marksmen. But even with the bow and arrow they could hit a running deer or a squirrel

on the jump. They were keen at following the trail of man or animal. By a crushed leaf, a broken twig, or a mark in the ground they could follow an enemy as surely as a hound follows the scent.

6—Indian Warfare

In war the Indians were led by their war chief and were cruel and bloodthirsty fighters. They thought it unmanly

to show fear and would suffer torture by their enemies without uttering a cry of pain. When called to war they colored their faces with war paint and performed the fierce war dance; then with loud yells, or war whoops, they attacked the enemy.



Indian War-chief

7—Scalp Lock. Calumet

They shaved part of their heads and the hair remaining on top was called the scalp lock. It was the Indian's greatest pride to take the scalp of his enemy and carry it

fastened to his belt. When the war was over, or when friendly Indians met in council, they smoked together from the same pipe. It was called the "Calumet," or pipe of peace.

8—Religion

The poor Indian did not know God. His religion was a sort of spirit worship. He thought that spirits lived in every tree and river and lake, and in all the things of nature; and he believed that if he died a good Indian he would go to the "happy hunting grounds."

9—Women

The Indian women were the servants of the men. They did all the hard work, and even tilled the soil. Their children, when small, were called "papooes" and were carried, wrapped and strapped, on the backs of the "squaws."

10—Writing and Money

The Indians had no writing except a rude sort of picture writing. Their treaties and important matters were recorded by beads, made from certain kinds of clam shells. These beads were worked into "wampum" belts (p. 63). Different figures were strung in them to represent various happenings. When the white men first traded with the Indians this wampum, as well as beaver and other skins, was used as money.

11—Population

The Indians although spread over a large country were not very numerous and numbered probably less than 400,000 when the first white men settled here.

CHAPTER II THE NORTHMEN

12—The Northmen

The Northmen were a race of brave sailors, sometimes called Vikings, who lived in the northern part of Europe. They made long voyages, in their sturdy little ships, with only the stars and sun as guides. They discovered Iceland and Greenland and founded colonies in those countries.

Leif Ericson, who lived in the Greenland Colony, while on a visit to Europe, became a Catholic, and returning home took with him priests, who converted all the colonists.

13—The Mainland

About the year 1000, Leif Ericson set forth from Greenland with an expedition which reached the mainland



Viking ships

of America. There were many wild grapes in the country and so he called it Vinland.* This is thought to have been on the New England coast.

14—Greenland

The Northmen did not remain in America but went back to Greenland. This Greenland colony lasted for about three hundred years and during all that time Catholic bishops were at the head of its church.

15—Discovery Forgotten

So although America was first visited by the Northmen, their visit was soon forgotten. Many years passed and they never went back to the land across the seas.

* Land of grapes.

CHAPTER III

THE WORLD IN THE 15TH CENTURY

16—Knowledge of Geography

The voyages of the Northmen were forgotten and in the first half of the 15th Century no white man knew that the Western Continent existed. In fact all that most people knew of the world was Europe and parts of Asia and Africa. Travel was very difficult and expensive. There were no railroads or steamships. But people were beginning to learn more of the world, because printing had been invented and books were being more generally read.

17—Franciscan Monks and Marco Polo.

During the 13th century China, or Cathay, as it was called, had been visited by some Franciscan monks and also by Marco Polo, a native of Venice. The accounts they wrote of the wonderful wealth and splendor of the Eastern lands were now being read and people wanted to know more of these countries.

18—Trade with the East

Merchants who had long traded with the East were anxious to extend this trade, though China and the Indies were very hard to reach. Trading with them was done by ships, mostly from Italy. Some of these ships sailed up the Black Sea and met the caravans which had come overland from China.

Other ships got their cargoes at the Isthmus of Suez, to which place the goods were brought by way of the Indian Ocean and Red Sea. Both these journeys were long and costly. To make matters worse about this time the Turks captured Eastern Europe, and closed the Black Sea route to Christian traders. Heavy taxes imposed by Egypt made the other route too costly.

19—Need of a New Route

On account of these difficulties people began to look for a shorter and safer way to the Indies. At this time nearly everyone thought the earth was flat like a table, and that if you went too far you would fall off. Some also thought the oceans were infested with terrible monsters and that sailors who ventured far would never come back. A few wise and learned men thought otherwise. From very ancient times a few thoughtful people believed the earth to be round, like a ball.

CHAPTER IV

COLUMBUS AND ISABELLA THE CATHOLIC

20—Christopher Columbus

Christopher Columbus, born in Genoa, Italy, in 1435, was one of those who believed the earth was round. He was the son of a wool-comber and as a boy had received some education. From the age of 14 he was a sailor and had many an adventure and narrow escape in war and peace. He studied the sea and loved it. When opportunity offered he also studied geography, arithmetic and astronomy. So he came to believe that the earth was round, but deemed it to be much smaller than it really is.

21—Plan of Columbus

When people became so anxious to find a shorter and safer way to the Indies Columbus proposed a new plan. He said "The earth is round like a ball and the Indies are on the other side of it. It is hard to get around to them by going *East*, so let us sail to the *West* and we shall reach them without trouble."

22—Lack of Faith in Columbus

This plan of Columbus was not well received. He was laughed at and asked how, if the world was round, people on

the other side could keep from falling off. But he was not to be turned by ridicule from what he thought was right. He presented his plan to the Kings of France, England, Portugal and other countries, but no one would help him.

At last, in 1485, he appealed to Spain. Here his reception gave him hope but it was a long time before anything was



Columbus appeals to the wise men of Spain

done for him. The Spaniards were busy driving the Moors out of their country and had no time for Columbus. When things seemed darkest for him God directed him to the right place.

23—Father Juan Perez

Thinking that he could expect no aid from Spain, Columbus, with his little son, Diego, set out, in 1491, to leave the

country. They stopped for shelter at the Franciscan Monastery of La Rabida, near the port of Palos, and there met the good Father Juan Perez. The story and the plan of Columbus greatly interested the monk, who became a believer in their merits.



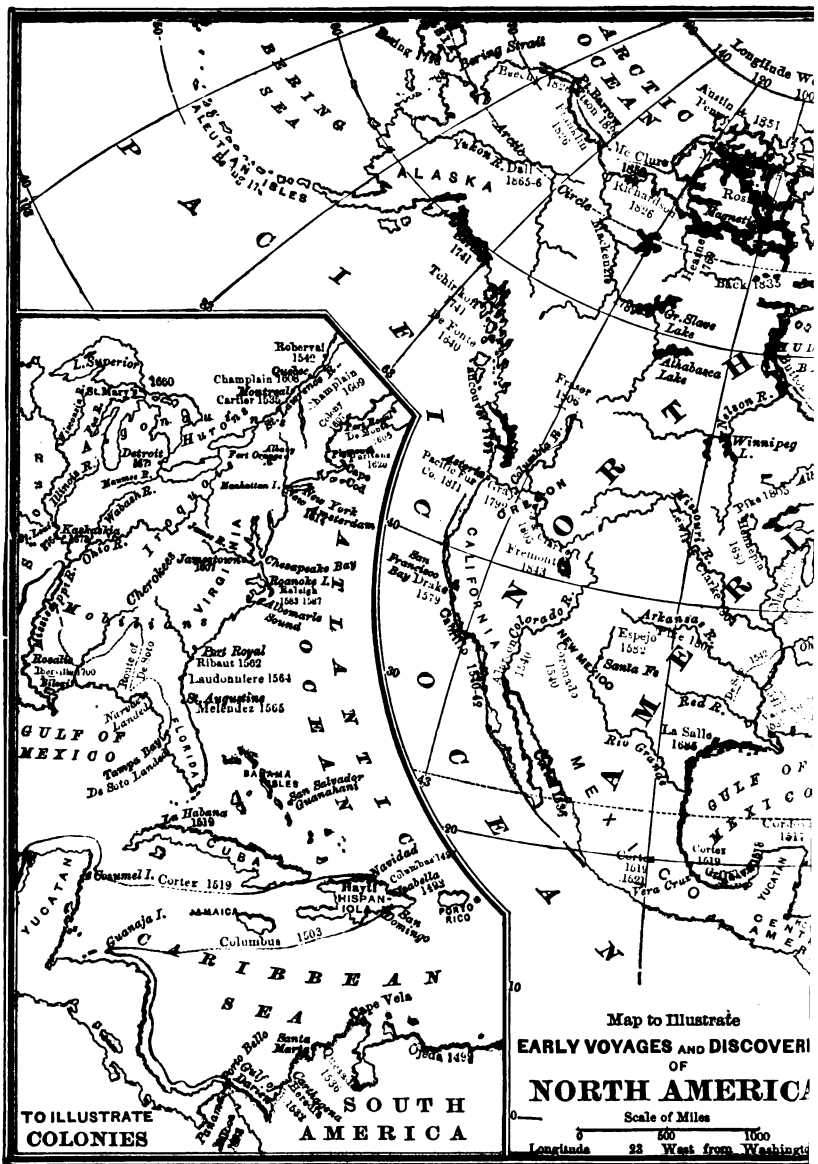
Wooden statue of Queen Isabella,
the Catholic

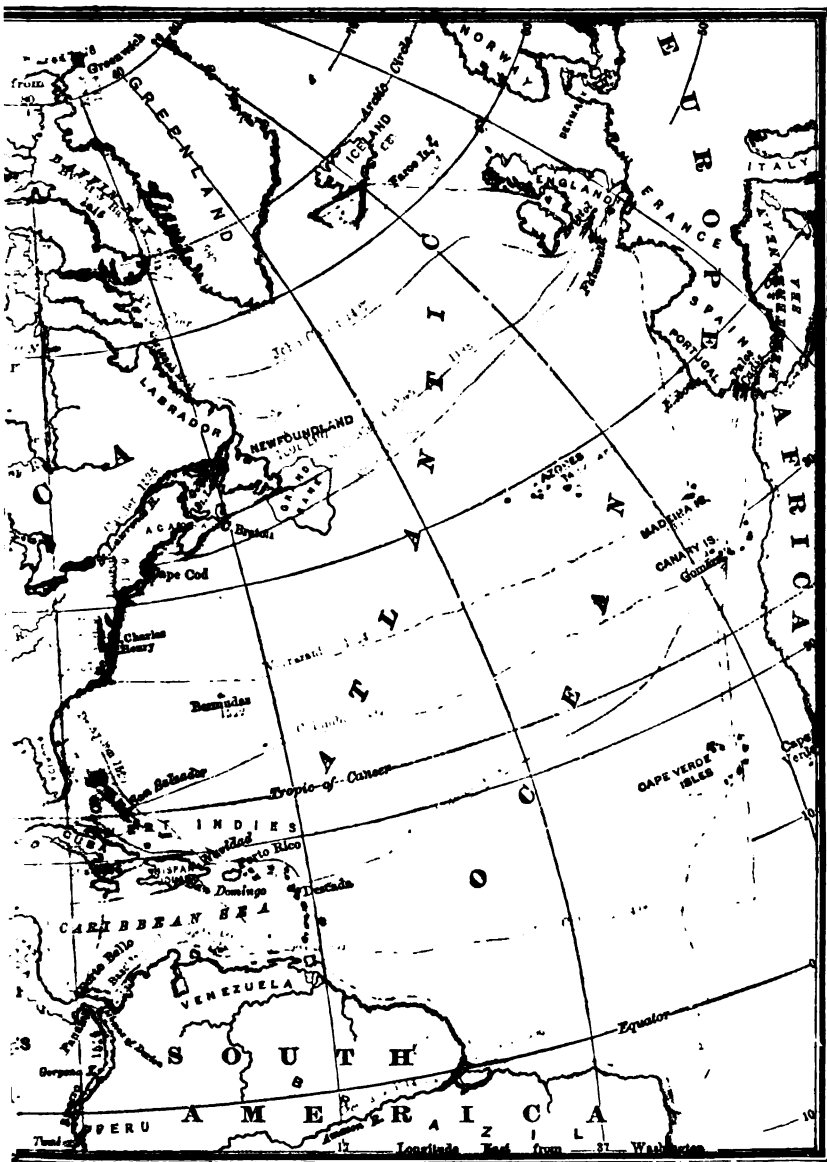
Bidding Columbus remain, he set out for the Spanish Court.

24—Isabella the Catholic

Father Perez had been the confessor of the good queen Isabella, and to her he fervently pleaded the cause of Columbus. The queen was impressed and allowed him to bring Columbus to court. Columbus renewed his plea, telling of the wealth and territory he thought would accrue to the Spanish crown; of the thousands of souls he thought might be brought to a

knowledge of the true God; and of the treasure that might be gained to help rescue the Holy Sepulchre from the Turks. The noble queen, Isabella the Catholic, fired with zeal for the conversion of souls, promised to provide money for the expedition, agreeing, if necessary, to pledge her jewels to raise the sum. Fortunately she was not called on to make this sacrifice.





.

.

CHAPTER V

THE VOYAGE

25—Preparation for the Voyage

It was difficult to find sailors to undertake this journey over unknown seas, but finally three small vessels were fitted out and manned. They were called the Santa Maria (Holy Mary), the Nina and the Pinta. Columbus and his crew received the Sacraments of Penance and Holy Eucharist from his benefactor, the good Father Perez, and then marched in procession to their vessels, in the little port of Palos.

26—The Departure

On August 3rd the ships set sail. We can imagine the feelings of hope and of fear in the hearts of the little company, and in the hearts of the dear ones they had left behind. Columbus did not sail directly west but first touched at the Canary Islands. Here the rudder of one of his ships was repaired and, on September 3rd, the great voyage to the west was begun. How brave were Columbus and his crew to undertake it! How great must have been their faith in God!

27—Fear

The ships sailed steadily westward and soon it was noticed that the wind kept blowing in one direction, from behind them only. This worried the sailors. "How can we sail back against this wind?" they asked. Then the sea became covered with seaweed, and they were more alarmed. For days and days they sailed and still no land was seen. The compass varied, fear grew greater, and at last the crew rebelled and threatening to throw Columbus overboard. The great Genoese was not afraid. To every objection, to each new revolt, his answer was the same: "Sail on, Sail on."

28—Land

Fortunately at this time, about four weeks after leaving the Canary Islands, there were signs that land might be near. A flock of wild ducks flew over the ships, and the course of the fleet was changed to go their way. Later a tree branch with berries was seen, and then a piece of carved wood. Hope came again to the hearts of all and at last one night Columbus himself saw a moving light. At day-break the next morning, Friday, October 12th, 1492, the glad cry of "Land! Land!" was heard from the Pinta, and the object of the great voyage was attained. Columbus fell on his knees and chanted the Te Deum.

29—The Landing

Soon natives were seen running to the shore, looking in wonder at the ships which they took to be great white birds. Three small boats were lowered and Columbus, rowing to the land, stepped ashore with the royal banner of Spain in his hand. Kneeling, he kissed the ground, and then raised his voice in a prayer of praise and thanks to God. He ordered a great cross to be built, and named the land San Salvador (Holy Savior), thus offering the fruits of his voyage to God.

30—Natives

Thinking he had reached the coast of India, Columbus called the country in general the West Indies, and the natives Indians. In reality he had reached one of the Bahama islands. Columbus then sailed to the south and discovered the islands of Cuba and Haiti, which last he called Hispaniola. The Santa Maria was wrecked on this coast. From the planks of the ship he built a fort and left forty men with provisions for a year. They were never found again.



Columbus. landing in America, gives thanks to God

31—The Return

Early in 1493 Columbus returned to Spain taking several Indians with him. The voyage home was rough and very stormy and it seemed as if the little vessels would be lost. Columbus prayed hard to the Blessed Virgin and promised to make a visit to her nearest shrine on landing. This he did when at last they were safely back; and good Father Perez offered up the Mass of Thanksgiving.

32—Reception

Columbus was received with highest honors by the king and queen who loaded him with favors after hearing his wonderful story. People who had laughed at him now praised him and tried to win his favor.

CHAPTER VI

DIVISION OF THE WORLD—OTHER VOYAGES

33—Division of the World

After the return of Columbus, in 1493, Pope Alexander VI issued a bull in which he divided the undiscovered portions of the earth by a line drawn almost down the middle of the Atlantic ocean. All to the west of this he gave to Spain; all to the east to Portugal. He exhorted the sovereigns to send priests to these new lands "to instruct the inhabitants in the Catholic faith and teach them good morals.

34—Second Voyage

Columbus quickly made ready for another voyage to the new world. Many were now willing to accompany him and the expedition consisted of fifteen hundred persons in seventeen ships. In obedience to the Pope's wishes some Dominican monks went with Columbus. Some say that Father Perez also went. They sailed September 25th, 1493, and on reaching the West Indies started a colony at Haiti, where

the first Catholic church in the new world was quickly built. Jamaica and Porto Rico were discovered on this trip.

35—Third Voyage, (1494)

While the results of the first two voyages had not entirely pleased the Spanish people because no gold or silver was brought back, still Columbus was again sent out. This time he reached the mainland of South America near the mouth of the Orinoco. Becoming ill he returned to the colony at Haiti and found things in very bad shape.

36—Columbus in Chains

The colonists were quarreling and Columbus himself was unjustly arrested for sedition, and sent back to Spain in chains. What a pitiful sight! The great Admiral



Columbus in chains

sent home from the land he had discovered a prisoner in chains! The captain of the ship carrying him back was anxious to take the fetters from Columbus, but he refused, saying that the King and Queen alone should do this.

37—Real Route to India

The discoveries of Columbus were the most important

ever made, but he never found what he really set out to look for—the water route to the Indies. Another did this. For years the Portuguese, encouraged by their great prince, Henry the Navigator, had been skirting the coast of Africa in their vessels. They were convinced that a water route to India would be found that way. Finally, in 1497, the Portuguese sailor, Vasco da Gama, sailed round the Cape of Good Hope and two years later returned to Portugal, with shiploads of the rich wares of India.

38—Columbus' Fourth Voyage

In 1502 the Spaniards, still hoping to find a westward route to Asia, sent Columbus once more across the Atlantic. He spent two years exploring the coast and touched at the Isthmus of Panama, but found no passage through. Disappointed, he returned to Spain, only to find the good Queen Isabella near to death.

39—Death of Columbus

Not long after this, on May 20th, 1506, Columbus himself died, in a little inn at Valladolid, believing to the end that he had discovered the Indies. Columbus died poor, neglected and even despised. To-day he is honored as one of the greatest men that ever lived. His life should be a lesson to us to care little for the opinion of the world, as long as we know we are doing right.

40—Spirit of Discovery

The discovery of America was a thoroughly Catholic project. In fact there were no Protestants at all then. The voyage of Columbus was placed under the protection of the Blessed Virgin. Among the most inspiring of Columbus's motives were the conversion of souls, and the obtaining of funds to fight the Turks and regain the Holy Sepulchre.

CHAPTER VII

OTHER CATHOLIC DISCOVERERS

41—The Cabots

When the discoveries of Columbus became known, other countries wanted a share of the new world. In 1497 John Cabot, an Italian sailor living in England, asked Henry VII, King of that country, to let him try to find a northerly passage to the Indies. After a fair voyage he discovered the mainland of America, at Labrador. Landing, he erected a cross and claimed the country for England, which was still Catholic. He explored the coast, probably as far south as the Chesapeake, and returning to England was received with honor.

42—Sebastian Cabot

Sebastian Cabot, son of John, who had been on the first voyage set out in the following year (1498) and explored the coast of America from Labrador to Florida. He found a large island and called it Newfoundland. He saw



Sebastian Cabot at Newfoundland

great numbers of codfish in the waters and on his return spread the news. Soon fishermen from France and England found their way to the "fishing banks," of Newfoundland. The winters were so cold however that no settlement was made on this island.

43—Amerigo Vespucci

Amerigo Vespucci, a native of Florence, was a member of a Portuguese expedition which discovered Brazil. Later he made another trip to the same region. On his return to Europe he wrote a glowing account of that land of beautiful flowers and fruits and birds of gay plumage. Learned people were now beginning to think all these newly discovered lands were really a new continent, and some thought Amerigo had discovered it.

A German map-maker brought out a little geography and in it called the new lands America, in honor of the explorer he thought had discovered them. At first this name was given only to South America but later the whole continent received it. And so Columbus was deprived of the honor of having the new world called for him.*

* When the study of each section has been completed the class should take up the "Class-Discussions" relating to that section, beginning on p. I, of the Appendix.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION I

1. Before the advent of the white man the western continent was inhabited only by savages.

2. The first white men to visit America were the Northmen, who came about the year 1000.

3. The Northmen made no permanent settlement, and their visits to America were soon forgotten.

4. In the Fifteenth Century people were very anxious to find a short route to the East Indies and China. Most people thought the world was flat.

5. Christopher Columbus, a native of Genoa, believed the world to be round. He begged aid from many countries to enable him to try to reach the Indies by sailing west across the Atlantic Ocean.

6. Columbus finally received this aid from Isabella the Catholic, Queen of Spain, and with a fleet of three small vessels discovered America, Oct. 12, 1492.

7. Columbus made four voyages to the New World, and died believing he had reached the Indies. The water route to the Indies was, in fact, discovered by Vasco de Gama, a Portuguese, who sailed around the Cape of Good Hope (1497) and so reached India.

8. Besides his hope of discovering the route to the Indies Columbus was animated by a most Catholic spirit—the desire to bring the knowledge of God to the natives in distant places, and to acquire treasure with which to fight the Turks, and redeem the Holy Sepulchre, in Palestine.

9. The Mainland of America was discovered (1497) by John Cabot, an Italian in the employ of England.

10. The New World was called America after an explorer named Amerigo Vespucci, whom some people mistakenly believed to be its discoverer. All these discoverers were Catholics. Protestantism had not yet been heard of.

SECTION II

EXPLORERS

CHAPTER VIII SPANISH EXPLORERS

44—Reasons for Exploration

This brings us to about the year 1500. We have learned about Columbus, who discovered America, about the Cabots, who first reached its mainland, and about Amerigo Vespucci, after whom it was named. During the next hundred years much exploration of the interior country was done by the Spaniards. There were two reasons for these explorations—the love of God, and the desire for conquest and gold.

45—Spanish Priests and Spanish Soldiers

Perhaps you will hear it said that it was only gold and conquest the Spaniards cared for. This is not so. Where the Spanish soldier went, there also went the priest—who often remained to labor and die a holy martyr, for the conversion of the Indians.

And then again, while the Spaniard conquered the natives he did not kill them off. Millions of Indians still live happily in the countries Spain once governed. This is particularly true of Mexico and South America which were colonized by Spaniards. Much has been written of the Spaniard's cruelty and love of gold—it is well also to know something of his piety and self sacrifice for souls.

46—Las Casas

In 1502, Bartholomew Las Casas came to America. He was the first priest ordained in America and later became a Dominican missionary. For sixty years he worked for the welfare of the natives and earned the title "Protector of the Indians."

**47—Ponce de Leon**

In 1513, Ponce de Leon, a brave old soldier and companion of Columbus, set sail from Porto Rico. Some say he was in search of a fountain of perpetual youth of which he heard from the Indians. He soon came to Florida, as he called it. This means "Flowery," from part of the Spanish name for Easter Sunday, on which day he first saw the land.

Las Casas, the protector of the Indians

48—Pacific Ocean

In 1513, a Spaniard of noble birth but of little wealth was governor of a settlement at Panama. His name was Balboa. He was kind to the Indians and they told him of a great ocean beyond the mountains. These he climbed and from their top saw the smooth waters of the broad Pacific Ocean. Descending the mountain, he waded into the waters, with the

cross in one hand and the flag of Spain in the other, and took possession of all its shores for his King, calling it the South Sea.

An American poet has thus described the ceremony:

“For Rome, Leon, Castile,
Thrice gave the cleaving blow;
And thus Balboa claimed the sea
Four hundred years ago.”



Vasco Nunez de Balboa taking possession of the Pacific Ocean

49—Narrow Strip of Land Separating Two Great Oceans

Even from these early times it was the ambition of mariners, first to find a passage, and later to make one, through this narrow strip of land which divided the Pacific from the Atlantic Ocean. The dream has now come true through the opening of the Panama Canal.

50—Cortez

Hernando Cortez with a small force set out to conquer Mexico, in 1519. For two years he fought the Aztecs, a race of Indians living in that country, and at last conquered them. These people were partly civilized. Great quantities of gold and silver were taken and sent to Spain. At last the long sought for treasure had been found and Spain soon became one of the richest nations in Europe.

51—Magellan

This same year, 1519, Ferdinand Magellan, a Portuguese in the employ of Spain, tried to find the westward passage to the Indies. With five ships he sailed down the coast of South America and west through the strait which is now named after him. He then came to the great ocean which he named "Pacific", because it seemed so calm after the Atlantic, which is very rough in that part of the world.

In time he discovered the Philippine Islands, where he lost his life fighting the natives (1521). One of his captains succeeded in rounding the Cape of Good Hope and reaching Spain with one ship. The journey took two years and was the first voyage around the world. It proved beyond a doubt that the world was round; it also proved that Columbus had not reached India.

52—Narvaez

Thinking that another empire rich as Mexico might be discovered, Narvaez, a Spanish soldier, with four hundred men, landed in Florida (1528). After famine and terrible suffering nearly all of them died or were killed by the Indians. Only four managed to reach Mexico after six years of wandering through the forests. Among those on this unfortunate trip were John Juarez, Bishop of Florida. He was the first bishop in what is now the United States.

53—Franciscan Missions

The story of one of the survivors of this trip made several holy priests eager to enter the country. One of them was Father Mark, a Franciscan. Leaving Mexico he travelled north over many hundreds of miles until he came to New



Father Mark

Mexico, where he planted a cross in an Indian village, in 1539. Returning he gave an account of his journey which led the Spaniards, under Coronado, to enter the country with a considerable force.

54—Coronado's Disappointment

They marched inland, and nearly as far east as the Mississippi River, but found the cities that had been reported were only Pueblo Indian villages, and that no treasure was to be had.

They were the first to see the Grand Cañon of the Colorado. They also met with enormous herds of buffalo which at that time overran the plains of the West. The expedition returned, but three of the priests remained, who labored among the Indians until finally put to death. They were the first martyrs for the faith in the present United States.



De Soto on the banks of the Mississippi River

CHAPTER IX

DISCOVERY OF THE MISSISSIPPI

55—De Soto

About the same time, 1539, Fernando De Soto, governor of Cuba landed in Florida, with a large force to explore the interior of the continent. For two years he pushed through the country, fighting the natives and enduring great trials. Crossing what is now Georgia, Alabama and Mississippi he came at last, in 1541, to the Mississippi River.

A year later De Soto died and was buried on the banks of the great river he had discovered. Fearing the Indians would steal his body, his companions dug it up and sank it at midnight in the muddy waters of the great river. A few of his men afterward reached civilization, but every priest had perished in the wilderness.

56—The Huguenots

Early in the sixteenth century the Catholic Church lost many of her children in Europe, through the establishment of Protestantism. From that time the history of America was much influenced by the bitter feeling between Catholics and Protestants. In 1562, some French Protestants, called Huguenots, built a fort at the mouth of the St. John River, in Florida. Spain claimed this country by right of discovery and sent a force under Admiral Melendez to destroy the French.

57—St. Augustine founded

Melendez built a fort at St. Augustine, in 1565, and some time afterwards attacked the French at Fort Caroline, killing nearly all of them. To avenge this a Frenchman, named De Gourgues, fitted out an expedition which attacked St. Augustine and hanged the soldiers there.

The Spaniards, however, continued to occupy the site and

the present city of St. Augustine is the oldest in the country. This fight between the Spaniards and French was the first quarrel over territory in the new world. The Huguenot settlement is the first we hear of Protestants in America.

58—Florida Missions

St. Francis Borgia, head of the Jesuits, sent priests to Florida in 1566. They studied the Indian language and founded the Florida Missions. Soon the Franciscans entered Florida and also suffered hardships and trials and even death for the glory of God. Towards the end of the century almost all the missions were destroyed and the good priests killed.

59—Santa Fé

In 1583, Santa Fé, in New Mexico, the second oldest city in the United States, was founded. The Franciscan Missions located there were very successful, and, long before the English had made a single settlement in the New World whole tribes of Indians had been converted.



The Jesuit teacher

CHAPTER X

FRENCH EXPLORATIONS

60—Verrazani

Francis I, King of France, sent out an expedition to America in 1524 under Verrazani, a native of Florence. The coast of Carolina was reached and Verrazani then sailed north. He was probably the first white man to enter New York harbor. He called his discoveries New France and erected crosses at various places. Verrazani's description of the Atlantic Coast was the first one published.



Cartier lands in Canada

61—Cartier

Ten years later Jacques Cartier was sent by the same king to make further discoveries. In 1534, he entered the Gulf of St. Lawrence, which he named in honor of the martyr, and erected a cross thirty feet high on the shore of Gaspé Bay. Cartier then continued up the St. Lawrence River until he could see land on both sides. He won the friendship of the natives and an Indian chief allowed two of his sons to go back with him to France.

62—Cartier's Other Voyages

The next year Cartier again entered the St. Lawrence and

sailed up as far as the Indian village of Hochelaga. The country was beautiful. Game, fish, and fruit abounded, and the little Indian village was beautifully situated at the foot of a mountain. Cartier and a friendly Huron chief climbed its top, and the explorer was so delighted with the view that he called it Montreal or Royal Mountain. Thus the present great city of Montreal acquired its name. The winter was severe, and in the spring Cartier went back to France.

A third voyage did not accomplish anything, and then for over sixty years France was so taken up with civil war that no further settlements were attempted in America.



Jacques Cartier

63—Quebec

In 1608, Samuel de Champlain, a retired naval officer, sailed up the St. Lawrence until he came to a part where the banks were very high and steep, and the river not very wide. Here he built a fort and founded the city of Quebec. Its natural position for defense was very strong, and it soon became the headquarters of the French in America.

Champlain, who has been called the "Father of New France", was a brave and pious man. Anxious to convert the Indians he sent home for missionary priests. The

Franciscans, and shortly after the Jesuits, took up this great work. They penetrated the heart of the wilderness, their work for the Indians leading them daily to new places, and into new dangers. The country was gradually explored by these holy men in their zeal for the salvation of souls.



An early view of Quebec

64—Discoveries

Champlain himself was an ardent explorer. He pushed south into what is now New York and discovered the lake called after him. To the west he explored Lakes Erie and Huron. With the friendly Algonquin Indians he fought the fierce Iroquois* of New York.

In a battle Champlain and some companions suddenly appeared, and firing their guns, killed several of the Iroquois. These Indians had never heard a gun before, and the loud noise, the flash, and the sudden death of their companions so frightened them that they fled in terror. The effect of this was important, as thereafter the Iroquois always hated the French and took sides with their enemies.

* The Iroquois or Five Nations. These Indians lived in the present State of New York, and were very powerful. They were divided into five nations: the Senecas, Cayugas, Onondagas, Oneidas and Mohawks.

CHAPTER XI

ENGLISH EXPLORATIONS

65—Northwest Passage

When it became known that America was a continent, it was still thought that somewhere through its northern part a passage could be found for ships to sail from the Atlantic to the Pacific Ocean. The English particularly thought that a "Northwest Passage" could be discovered.



Drake's ship, "The Golden Hind"

66—Martin Frobisher

An Englishman, named Martin Frobisher, made three voyages, 1576 to 1579, to discover this passage. He did not find it, but twice brought back cargoes of worthless rocks he mistook for gold.

67—Drake

England was now a Protestant nation, and the rivalry with Catholic Spain was great. Sir Francis Drake, an English sea rover, set out, in 1579, on a voyage to prey on the Spaniards. He reached the Pacific Ocean and plundered the Spanish settlements in Chili and Peru.

Fearing the Spanish fleet hunting for him in the south, Drake tried to get back to England by sailing north around North America. He sailed as far north as Oregon and finding no passage through turned back to California. Resting for a time in San Francisco Bay, he called the country New Albion and claimed it for England. Drake finally returned home by way of the Cape of Good Hope, thus making the second voyage around the world.

68—Dutch Explorations

Another nation had a large traffic with the Indies and so was anxious to find the short Northwest Passage. This was



Henry Hudson is welcomed by the Indians

Holland, where the Dutch people live. In 1608, they employed an explorer, Henry Hudson, an Englishman, to search for the short sea route to Asia. Hudson in his ship, the "Half Moon," reached the American coast in 1609, and explored many inlets hoping to come upon an open passage.

Reaching the Hudson River (called after him), he sailed up as far as the present site of Albany. He found no passage, but he realized that a large fur trade could be established with the Indians. So he claimed the country for the Dutch East India Company, which had sent him out. The land claimed extended from the Delaware to the Connecticut River and cut in two the territory along the coast claimed by England.

**69—Sir Humphrey
Gilbert**

About 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert made two attempts to colonize America but did not succeed. He was drowned on his last voyage.

**70—Sir Walter
Raleigh**

Sir Walter Raleigh was the half brother of Gilbert and after his death made many efforts to start a colony in America. He did not succeed. These attempts at settlement were principally around Roanoke Island. Raleigh was the first to bring tobacco and the potato to England. The potato grew very easily in Ireland and became one of the principal articles of food in that land.



Sir Walter Raleigh

Raleigh learned from the Indians to smoke tobacco. One day in England, when he was smoking his pipe, a servant entered the room with some ale for him to drink. Seeing the smoke coming out of his master's mouth and nose, he thought that Sir Walter was on fire, and dashed the ale over him.



Queen Elizabeth

71—Virginia

All the territory claimed by England in America was now called Virginia. It was so named by Queen Elizabeth in her own honor.

72—Lost Colony

Raleigh's first colony did not succeed and a second was started at Roanoke, in 1587. Here little Virginia Dare was born, the first child of English speaking parents to be born in America. The Governor of the colony went home to England for supplies. On his return three years later the colony of over one hundred people had vanished. The only sign left was the word "Croatan," carved on a tree. Nobody knows to this day what became of them all.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION II

1. Florida was discovered (1513) by Ponce de Leon. Florida means "flowery," from a part of the Spanish name for Easter Sunday, on which day the land was discovered.

2. The Pacific Ocean was discovered (1513) at Panama, by Balboa. He called it the South Sea.

3. A semi-civilized race of Indians, called Aztecs, inhabited Mexico. They were conquered (1519) by Hernando Cortez, and Spain received much treasure from this country.

4. In 1519, the first voyage around the world was made by an expedition under Ferdinand Magellan. This voyage proved beyond all doubt, that the world was round, and also proved that America was a continent.

5. The Mississippi was discovered (1541) by Fernando de Soto. He died and was buried in its waters.

6. Canada was discovered (1524) by Jacques Cartier, a Frenchman.

7. Quebec was founded (1608) by Samuel de Champlain, the "Father of New France." France claimed all the country thereabouts.

8. The Pacific Coast of America was first visited, about 1580, by Francis Drake an English sea captain. He is the first Protestant explorer of importance we hear of. All those before him were Catholics.

9. Henry Hudson, an Englishman employed by Holland, visited the present site of New York, in 1609, and sailed up the river named after him, as far as where Albany now stands. He was in search of the "northwest passage," a water route through the American Continent which many believed existed.

10. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, and his brother-in-law Sir Walter Raleigh, made several unsuccessful attempts to found colonies in Virginia, toward the end of the Sixteenth Century. Virginia was the name then given to all the English claims in America. They were so called in honor of Queen Elizabeth.

SECTION III

COLONIZATION

CHAPTER XII

SEVENTEENTH CENTURY

73—The Seventeenth Century

At the year 1600, more than one hundred years after the discovery of America, the only settlements in the present United States were at St. Augustine and Santa Fé. Both of these were to a great extent made possible by the work of the Catholic priests among the Indians. Now, however, the English, French, and Dutch were all eager to colonize the lands they claimed in America.

74—London and Plymouth Companies

It took a great deal of money to start a colony, more than one man could afford, as Sir Walter Raleigh had found out. So a company called the Virginia Company was formed to develop the English claims. A number of men from London got together and formed a branch of the Virginia Company called the London Company.

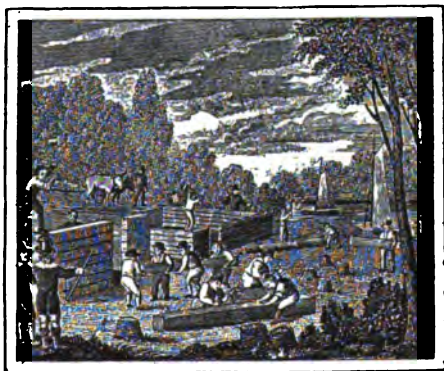
Others from Plymouth formed a branch called the Plymouth Company. This latter company was given grants of land on the New England Coast. The London Company received territory on the Atlantic Coast south of the Potomac River.

75—Jamestown Settled 1607

The Plymouth Company sent out a colony to Maine near the Kennebec River but it failed. The London Company

had a better territory in the warmer lands farther to the south. In 1607, it sent out colonists who reached Virginia and settled on a river which they called the James. The little settlement was called Jamestown. Both were named in honor of King James I, of England.

This was the first permanent English settlement in America. However its beginning was full of troubles. The colonists were badly chosen for their work as there were few mechanics or laborers. Most of the new comers were brokendown gentlemen, who spent their time looking for gold, instead of working. Food became scarce and starvation was near.



SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN

76—Captain John Smith

When things were very bad Capt. John Smith took charge, and made the rule that "Those who did not work should not eat." Soon all were at work planting corn and clearing the forest. The colonists made friends with the Indians and traded small articles with them for food. When Smith was in Jamestown things ran very well but he was very fond of roving about and exploring the country.

77—Pocahontas

During one of his trips Smith was wounded and captured by some Indians. They made up their minds to kill him. Smith was not afraid. He took out his pocket compass and

the savages became interested in the way it worked and spared his life. He was taken before the Chief, Powhatan, who ordered him put to death. As he was about to be brained with a club, Pocahontas the young daughter of the



Pocahontas saves the life of Captain John Smith

chief begged her father to spare his life. The chief relented and Smith was set free. Pocahontas became a friend of the settlers and brought them many gifts of food.

78—Starving Time

In 1609, about five hundred new colonists arrived but they were just as lazy as the first lot and did not want to work. They expected to fill their chests with gold and go back home to spend their money. Smith was injured about this time and went back to England. With no one to compel the lazy colonists to work nothing was done.

The Indians became hostile and killed many. Food gave

out and that winter was known as the Starving Time. When spring came there were but sixty people left and they were about to desert the colony, when Lord Delaware arrived with fresh settlers. The colony then began to prosper. Forts were built for defense, all were made to work and supplies were gathered.



Coming of Lord Delaware

79—Argall

A wicked sea captain, named Argall, committed a contemptible act. Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhatan, was bought by him from a tribe of Indians she was visiting. The price he paid was a copper kettle. Argall held her for ransom. Powhatan got ready for war instead. Just then John Rolfe, a young colonist, offered to marry Pocahontas and Powhatan agreed. After their marriage Rolfe took her to England to visit the King.

80—Argall Destroys Missions

A short time after this the treacherous Argall attacked the French missionaries at Mt. Desert in Maine. He killed one, turned others adrift in an open boat and took the rest captive to Virginia. Governor Dale who had succeeded Lord Delaware, was going to hang them. He relented however and they reached France safely.

**CHAPTER XIII
PROGRESS OF COLONY****81—Community Plan**

During the early days the colony was run on a community plan. That is each colonist received a share of all the crops and products. This was found to be a poor plan as those who worked hard supported the idlers. So each man was given a piece of land which was to belong to him, and on which he could build his own house and raise his own crops.

82—Tobacco

The colonists had looked in vain for gold but they found something which was almost as valuable. John Rolfe, the husband of Pocahontas, commenced growing tobacco, in 1615. Soon it was found that England would buy all that could be raised and everyone started raising it. It was used even as money, and so little of anything else was grown that laws had to be passed compelling each man to raise a certain amount of corn for food.

83—First Assembly

In this first English settlement in America the people soon showed they wanted to govern themselves. In 1619 each of the eleven plantations elected two delegates, who assembled in Jamestown. This assembly was called the House of Burgesses. We, who are citizens of the great American

Republic, should remember the little assembly in Virginia. It was the beginning of "government by the people" in the new world.

84—Slavery

The first slaves in the colony were brought by a Dutch ship in the same year, 1619. They were twenty negroes from Africa. Later white people were also held in a kind of slavery. These were criminals and also poor people from England, who could not pay their passage to America. They bound themselves to work a long time for the planters, in return for their passage money to the new world. They were called "indentured servants."

85—Family Ties

In 1620, a number of young women came over to Virginia from England. They were married to the planters who paid the expense of their passage. The colonists became happy and contented. They were peaceful and prosperous, except when the Indians gave them trouble.

86—Indian Massacre

The Indians went on the war path in 1622 and massacred nearly four hundred whites. A war followed, and the Indians were so severely punished that they were quiet for twenty years. In 1624, King James took away the charter of the London Company and made Virginia a royal province. In 1642, during the Civil War in England, Virginia remained true to the King, becoming known as "The Old Dominion."

87—Bacon's Rebellion

The colonists suffered from unjust laws and Governor Berkely refused to let them take proper defensive measures against the Indians. Civil war broke out under the leader-

ship of Nathaniel Bacon. Berkely was defeated but Bacon died soon after and the rebellion ceased.

88—Manners

There were few towns or villages in Virginia and there was little education, as there were not many books or schools. The people lived for the most part on plantations, where



All that remains of Jamestown

in time they built fine homes and kept many slaves. Their amusements were fox hunting, racing, and other out of door sports. They had no manufactures, giving all their time to raising tobacco. What goods they needed, were brought to them from England in the ships which took their tobacco back. They raised all their own food.

CHAPTER XIV

SETTLEMENT OF NEW YORK

89—First Settlers

We have learned that New York was first visited by Verazani and later, in 1609, by Henry Hudson, an Englishman in the employ of Holland. Hudson claimed the territory for the Dutch East India Company. This company, in 1614, sent out agents to trade with the Indians. They found the same beautiful bay and noble river Hudson had seen, but not a white man was there. A few Indians paddled about in their canoes. To-day ships and steamers from all parts of

the world crowd these waters. Millions of people live on the shores. It is the great harbor of New York.

90—New Netherlands

Landing on the end of Manhattan Island, a little trading post was founded. Knives, guns, hatchets, looking glasses, and small trinkets were bartered for the skins of beaver, otter, mink, and other animals. Near this very spot many great "sky scraper" buildings of New York City now stand. A little later the Dutch sailed up the beautiful Hudson River and established another trading post. It came to be known as Fort Orange, the site of the present city of Albany.



New Amsterdam, the church built in the fort

The powerful Iroquois inhabited the region thereabouts. These Indians hated their neighbors the French since the time Champlain fought them, and readily made friends with the Dutch and later with the English.

91—Other Dutch Trading Posts

Other Dutch people crossed over the Hudson River to trade with the Indians of New Jersey. They built Fort

Nassau, where Camden now stands. Still others sailed along the water, now called Long Island Sound, and traded with the Connecticut Indians. So you see the Dutch claimed what is now one of the richest parts of our country. In honor of their old home they called it all New Netherland.

92—New Amsterdam

The places we have spoken of were as yet only trading posts, but, in 1623, a new company, called the Dutch West India Company, sent a large number of settlers to Manhattan. The village was given the name of New Amsterdam and it prospered from the beginning. The Dutch friendship with the powerful Iroquois also enabled them to extend their colonies to the interior of the country.

93—Patroons

In order to hurry the growth of settlements large grants of land were offered to anyone starting a colony of at least fifty people outside the island of Manhattan. These proprietors were called "patroons" and lived like lords, each on his own land.

94—Dutch Governors

For forty years, until 1664, New Netherlands was ruled by Dutch Governors, the last of whom was Peter Stuyvesant, called "Headstrong Peter."⁸ He was brave and honest but very despotic. The people were inclined to want more freedom but he threatened to "make a foot shorter" anyone who did not obey him. Stuyvesant had lost a leg in an attack on a Portuguese fort in the West Indies and used a wooden one.

95—New Sweden

The King of Sweden also sent out some of his people to found a colony in the new world. They were led by Peter



Governor Peter Stuyvesant in a rage tears up the English demand for the surrender of New Amsterdam

Minuit a Dutchman who had been Governor of New Netherlands. The Swedes settled on the Delaware River, in 1638, and called the country New Sweden. A few years later the Dutch of New York sent a force and captured the settlement and added it to the New Netherlands.

CHAPTER XV

ENGLISH IN NEW YORK

96—English Take New Amsterdam

The Dutch colony of New Netherlands separated the English colonies of New England and Virginia, and the English made up their minds to capture it. They sent a fleet of four ships and demanded its surrender, (1664). Peter Stuyvesant stumped around on his wooden leg and wanted to fight. The thrifty Dutch settlers did not want their homes knocked down by cannon balls and made him surrender. The English took the whole country and the King gave it to his brother, the Catholic Duke of York and Albany.

97—Called New York

The name New Amsterdam was changed to New York, and Fort Orange became Albany. It became a "proprietary" colony; that is one owned outright by a person. The colony remained English with the exception of one year, 1673-74, when the Dutch re-captured it, but lost it again to the English. So England came to own the whole coast from Florida to Nova Scotia.

98—English Governors

The first two English Governors of New York ruled wisely but the third, Sir Edmund Andros, was a tyrant. After him came Governor Thomas Dongan, an Irish Roman Catholic. He called together an assembly and gave the colony what is known as the Dongan Charter, or the

"Charter of Liberties." Among other things it gave liberty of conscience.

Dongan was a devout Catholic and had his own private chapel, with a Jesuit priest as chaplain. In 1685, the Duke of York, to whom New York belonged, became King, and the territory became a royal province, remaining so until after the Revolution.

99—Catholicity Proscribed

A revolution in England took the throne from the Catholic King and gave it to the Protestants, William and Mary. This resulted in the New York Assembly passing laws, in 1691, which made Catholicity a crime. Many of the Catholic Indians went to Canada to live, where their descendants still remain true to the faith. The Indian Catholic missions in central New York were flourishing at this time, and schools and churches were being established.

100—Manners and Religion

At this time the people of New York were still mostly Dutch. They were thrifty and hospitable. They lived plainly, arising at dawn, and going to bed at sunset. The houses were of wood or of brick brought over from Holland. Protestantism was the religion of the colony but the Dutch did not persecute the Catholics.

Under Governor Dongan a Catholic school was opened, and three priests were stationed in the town. Later this fair treatment of Catholics ceased, and the practice of their religion was forbidden. Still later the Catholics were subjected to persecution. Priests were expelled and threatened with death and, in 1741, four Catholics, unjustly accused of a plot to burn the town, were put to death.

CHAPTER XVI

NEW JERSEY

101—New Jersey

When the Duke of York became the proprietor of the New Netherlands, he sold the land between the Hudson and the Delaware rivers to his friends Lord Berkely and Sir George Carteret. The latter had been the Governor of the Island of Jersey in the English Channel, and the new grant was called New Jersey in his honor.



Governor Carteret of New Jersey

102—First Settlement

The first English settlement was at Elizabeth (1664). But the settlers refused to pay rent or taxes, and so, in 1674, Lord Berkely sold his share of the land to William Penn and some other Quakers. It was then called West Jersey. When a few years later Carteret died, the Quakers also bought his share, called East Jersey.

103—Royal Province

Again the owners had trouble collecting the rents, and in 1702, gave up their claims to the King, and New Jersey also became a royal province. Many Dutch lived in the eastern part of New Jersey near the Hudson. Puritans from New England settled at Newark. New Jersey was never bothered by the Indians and so grew rapidly and was prosperous.

CHAPTER XVII

NEW ENGLAND

104—Plymouth

The first settlement in what is now Massachusetts was made, in 1620, by the Pilgrims. Pilgrim means "wanderer" and these people are so called because they wandered from place to place, before reaching America. They were "Separatists" in religion, and were persecuted because they had separated from the Church of England. So they left England and settled for a few years in Holland. That country was strange to them, and wanting a home of their own, they returned to England and spent several weeks there, preparing to go to America.

About one hundred of the Pilgrims sailed in the little ship *Mayflower*, and landed at Plymouth near Cape Cod. This Cape was in that part of the country called "New England" by Capt. John Smith, on his map of the coast of northern North America. This map was drawn in 1614.

105—Mayflower Compact

Before leaving the *Mayflower* the Pilgrims made an agreement or compact, binding themselves to make and keep laws that would be fair and just to all. They elected Miles Standish their military leader and prepared to settle permanently.

107—First Winter.

The newcomers' first winter on this bleak New England coast was very severe. They were able at first to build only one large house, which had to shelter all who lived on shore. The women and children lived on board the *Mayflower*. This single building, however, was the beginning of the town of Plymouth, Massachusetts.

Before spring more than one half of the company had died from exposure and famine, among them Governor Carver. Yet so determined were the Pilgrims to have a home of their own that, when the Mayflower went back to England in the Spring, not one of the colony went with her.



Puritan settlers in America

108—Indians

When Spring arrived the Pilgrims were visited by a friendly Indian who said to them "Welcome Englishmen." He had learned these few words in English from the fishermen who visited the coast.

Massasoit, a powerful Algonquin chief, soon became friendly with the Englishmen, making a treaty of alliance with them and remaining their firm friend.

109—Defiance of Canonicus

Near the English settlement there was another tribe of Indians who were foes of Massasoit. When he became

friendly with the Pilgrims, these other savages made up their minds to make war on the English. Their chief, Canonicus, sent to the whites a skin of a rattlesnake stuffed with arrows, as a token of hostility. William Bradford, who was the second governor, returned to the Indians the skin filled with powder and shot. Canonicus then knew the English would fight and therefore let them alone.

The colony grew slowly. From the first each church member had a vote in the government. Town meetings were held in which the settlers voted on measures for the good of the colony.

110—Massachusetts Bay Colony

In 1628, a large number of Puritans came from England and founded the Massachusetts Bay Colony at Salem. Boston was settled, in 1630, by Puritans from that town. This colony grew quickly although its laws were severe. The Puritans had left England to find a home where they could worship as they thought right, and they insisted on keeping the place sacred to their own religious views. They imprisoned or banished those who differed. The Plymouth and Massachusetts Bay colonies were united in 1641.

111—Witchcraft

Later a queer superstition spread among some of the Puritan colonists. They began to believe that many of their people were witches; that they were controlled by evil spirits. No one was safe from being accused, and many good people were put in prison and tortured, and some hanged.

112—Progress of the Colony

The Puritans were industrious, sober, enterprising and strict in religious matters. They also were narrow minded and bigoted regarding liberty of conscience. Amusements were not allowed and it was considered wrong to dance or

to play musical instruments. They had much hard work to do and it was sinful, they thought, to waste time in any way. The Puritans were anxious to be well educated, and Harvard College was founded, in 1636, and a printing press was set up in Cambridge, Massachusetts. Efforts were made to convert and civilize the Indians.



Old Harvard College (from an early print)

CHAPTER XVIII

NEW HAMPSHIRE, MAINE, CONNECTICUT AND RHODE ISLAND

113—Gorges and Mason

Two men, named Gorges and Mason, received a grant of all the land between the Merrimac and the Piscataqua rivers. In 1623, settlements of dissatisfied Puritans, and other Englishmen, were made at Portsmouth and Dover, and the country was called New Hampshire.

The settlers had a hard time protecting themselves from the Indians and asked to be joined to Massachusetts. This was done in 1641. Later New Hampshire became a Royal

Province, and although it again came under Massachusetts, it was separated for good in 1741.

114—Maine

In 1629, Gorges received another grant of land, from the Piscataqua to the Kennebec River, and founded the colony of Maine. It was so called because the fishermen spoke of this part of the country as the "main" land. Portland was founded, in 1632. Massachusetts bought the claims of Gorges, and Maine remained a part of this colony until it was admitted to the Union as a separate State, in 1820.

115—Connecticut. First Settlements and Union

As you have learned, the Dutch, claiming part of Connecticut, had established trading posts in the Connecticut Valley. In 1633, the English Puritans also entered this region, building a fort at Windsor and later one at Saybrook, at the mouth of the Connecticut River.

In 1636, a number of settlers emigrated from Massachusetts to Connecticut



The Connecticut Valley

carrying most of their household effects with them. They drove their cattle before them, living principally on milk while in the wilderness. The towns of Hartford and

Wethersfield were started by them, both in the valley of the Connecticut.

The three towns of Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield formed, in 1639, a union for their better protection from the Dutch and the Indians. This was the first colonial union in America. It was based on a written agreement, which was called the "Fundamental Orders."

116—New Haven

New Haven was settled by a colony of Puritans under Rev. John Davenport in 1638. They came from Boston but had left England only a few months previously. They lived under very strict laws, and other religions were not tolerated.

117—Confederation of New England

In 1643 the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, New Haven and the Connecticut River settlements, formed a union for their mutual protection. This union lasted forty years.

118—Connecticut a Colony

The Connecticut River settlements and New Haven joined and formed the Colony of Connecticut, in 1662. They received a very liberal charter from the King, being allowed to elect their own Governor and representatives. These privileges they prized very much.

About twenty years later the charter was annulled and Sir Edmund Andros was made royal governor by the King. The power given Andros was very great. He governed and laid taxes without the consent of the people and came to be known as the "tyrant."

119—Charter Oak

Andros went to the assembly at Hartford to demand the

charter. The colonists hated to give up this precious document. In the midst of the uproar which followed the lights suddenly went out. When they were relit the charter was gone. Captain Wadsworth had escaped with it and hid it in the hollow of a famous tree afterward called the Charter Oak.*

120 Rhode Island

Roger Williams was a young minister who did not believe in either the religion professed by the Puritans, or in their treatment of the Indians. He was ordered to be arrested and sent back to England, but managed to escape. For three months in the depth of winter, in 1635, Williams wandered through the forest. He was helped by the Indians, Massasoit and Canonius, and the following spring received a tract of land from them.



Hiding the Charter in the oak

Other white people who believed as he did joined him, and a little village was started. In gratitude to God they called it Providence. Portsmouth and Newport were founded soon afterward, and each settlement governed itself. People of all faiths were welcome. In 1643, Williams went to England and got a charter which united the settlements into the one colony of Rhode Island.

*This incident is denied by some, who say that Andros took the original charter and that only a copy had been put in the tree hollow some time before.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION III

1. In 1600, more than one hundred years after the discovery of America, the only permanent settlements in the United States were the Spanish towns of St. Augustine, Florida, and Santa Fe, New Mexico.

2. The first English settlement in America was made in Jamestown, Va., in 1607.

3. Within a dozen years after this settlement was founded the first attempt at home rule was made by the colonists, who established the House of Burgesses, in Virginia.

4. New York was settled by the Dutch (about 1614) for trading purposes. They named the country New Netherlands and claimed all the territory between the Connecticut and Delaware rivers. First permanent settlement New Amsterdam (1623).

5. The English captured the New Netherlands (1664) and changed its name to New York.

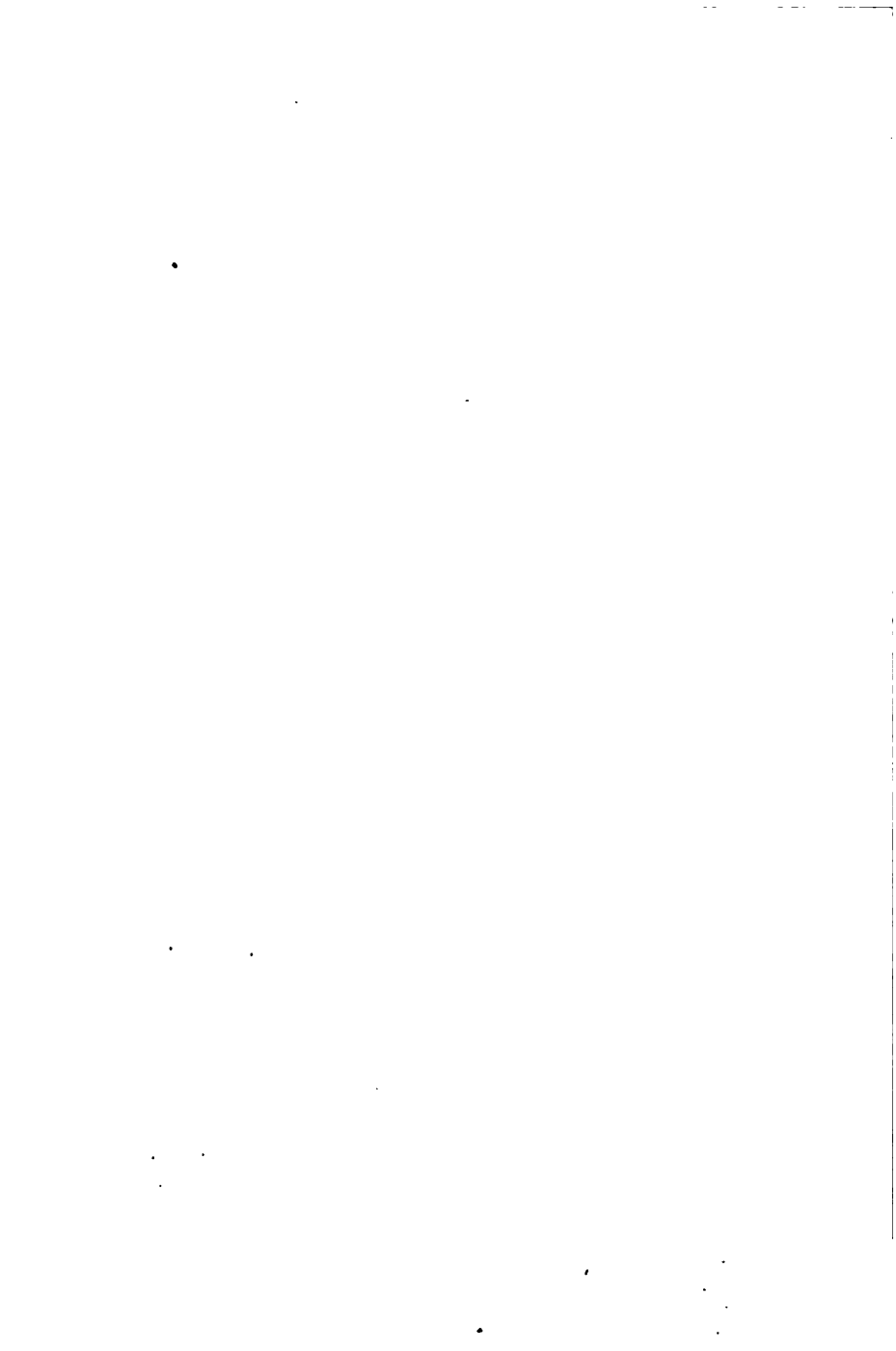
6. That part of the colony of New York lying west of the Hudson was sold by the Duke of York to some friends, (1673) and became the Colony of New Jersey.

7. New England was settled by English Puritans at Plymouth, Mass., in 1620. They were people who did not believe in the Church of England and were driven from home in consequence.

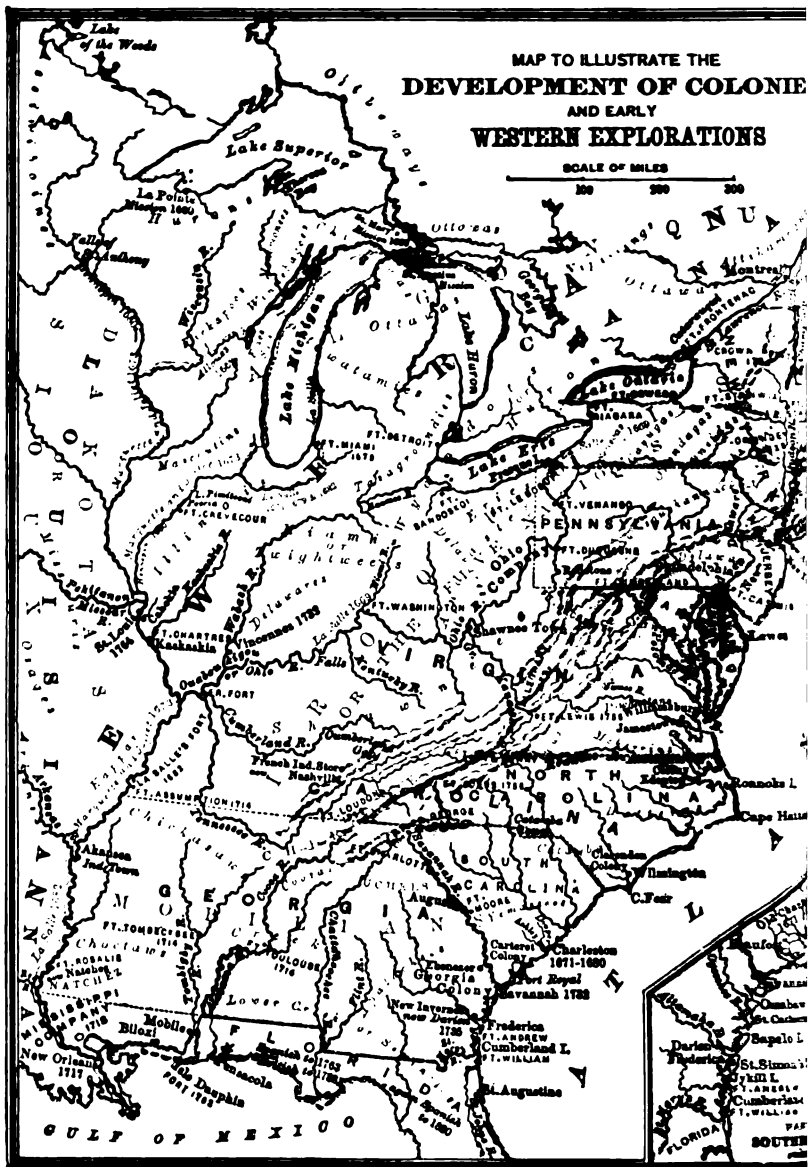
8. New Hampshire was settled (1623) by Puritans from Massachusetts, and from England.

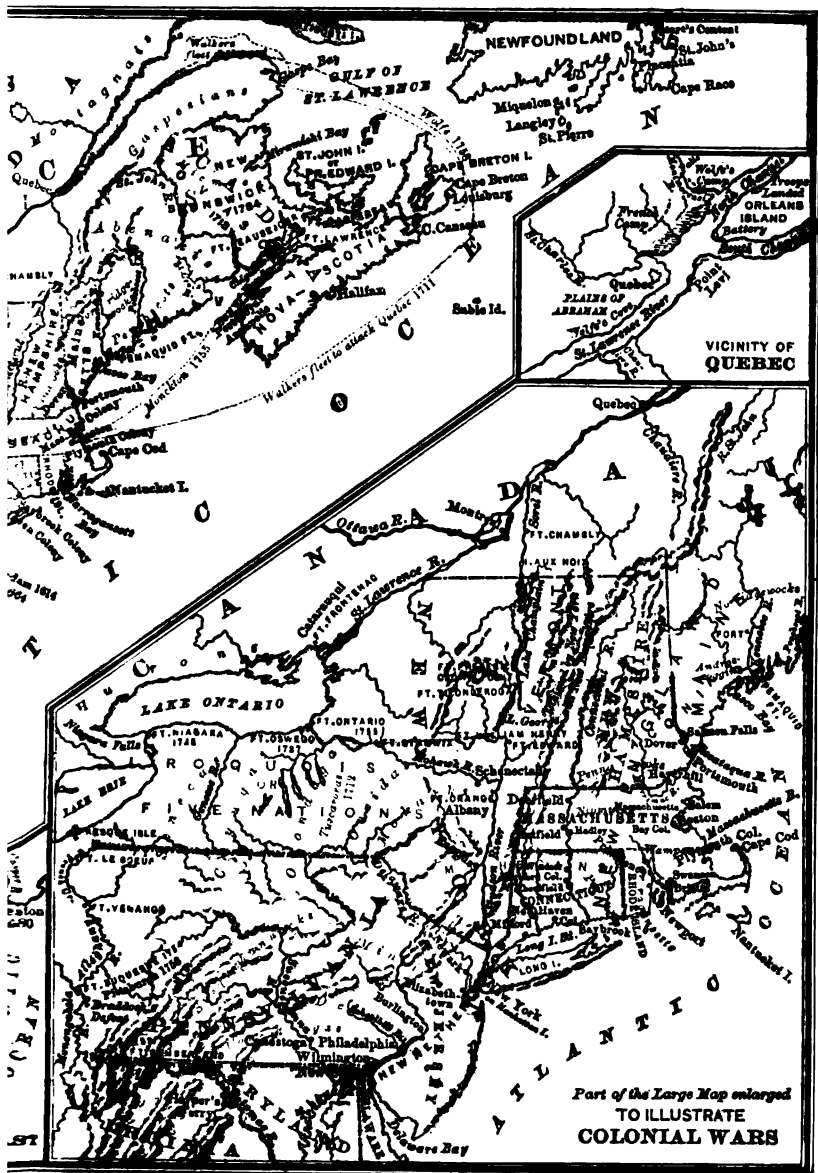
9. Part of Connecticut was claimed by the Dutch, but English Puritans settled there as early as 1633; in 1662 the various settlements became the colony of Connecticut.

10. Rhode Island was settled by Englishmen from Massachusetts, led by Roger Williams (1635). They had become dissatisfied with the beliefs and actions of the Massachusetts Puritans.



A horizontal scale bar labeled "SCALE OF MILES" with markings at 100, 200, and 300.





SECTION IV

COLONIZATION

CHAPTER XIX

MARYLAND

121—Lord Baltimore

The English Government persecuted the Puritans, and their treatment of Catholics was equally bad. Sir George Calvert, Lord Baltimore, was a Protestant who became a Catholic convert. He asked the King, who had given him the title of Lord Baltimore, for a grant of land in America where his fellow Catholics could go and practice their religion in peace. This the King promised, but Calvert died before getting it. His eldest son Cecil, the second Lord Baltimore, received the grant and a charter for a colony and, in 1634, sent out a company under his brother, Leonard Calvert. He called the territory Maryland, after the name of the Queen, Henrietta Maria (Mary).



Lord Baltimore

122—St. Mary's

The expedition sailed in two ships, the Ark and the Dove. On board were three hundred colonists including four Jesuit priests. Sailing up the Potomac River, they landed on the feast of the Annunciation. Mass was celebrated, and a great cross was erected. A favorable site was chosen for the first settlement, St. Mary's.

The Indians, won by the friendly manner of the strangers, helped them. They sold them an Indian Village, in return for cloth, trinkets, and other articles. Around it were corn-fields already planted. The squaws taught the English women how to make bread of maize (corn), and the warriors showed the white men the best hunting grounds. More priests soon arrived and labored among the Indians. Before long the Indian Chief and many of his tribe were baptized, as well as members of other tribes near-by.

123—Religious Toleration

The fame of the colony of Maryland rests on its religious freedom. No matter what a man's religion might be he was welcome, if he believed in Christ and he behaved himself. Many immigrants came to Maryland because the Catholic colony offered freedom of worship, and a refuge to the persecuted.

124—Clayborne

An English trader of Virginia, named Clayborne, had received a license from the King to trade with the Indians. He had a trading settlement on an island within the limits of Maryland, but he refused to acknowledge the rights of Lord Baltimore, and took up arms against him. Clayborne was defeated but continued to annoy the colony. At one time he succeeded in driving Lord Baltimore away for two years.

125—Toleration Act

In 1649, on the return of Lord Baltimore, the Toleration Act was passed. This guaranteed freedom of worship to all who believed in Christ. Many Protestants who were persecuted in other Colonies came to Maryland. Instead of being grateful for the refuge offered them they seized the government as soon as they became strong enough. In 1654, they repealed the Act of Toleration. Four years later Lord Baltimore's government was restored and with it the right of freedom of worship.

126—Royal Province

This lasted until 1689, when the Catholics were again stripped of their rights and the colony was made a royal province. The fifth Lord Baltimore regained the family inheritance by sacrificing his religion and turning Protestant. Not until the American Revolution did the Catholics regain their rights in this colony which they had founded, and to which they had generously welcomed all others.

127—Annapolis—Baltimore

In 1649, Puritans founded a settlement called Providence, in Maryland. The name was changed to Annapolis in 1699, and it became the capital. Baltimore was founded in 1729.

CHAPTER XX**DELAWARE AND THE CAROLINAS****128—New Sweden**

As we have learned, the Dutch and Swedes both settled in the region called Delaware, but the Swedes were driven off by the Dutch under Peter Stuyvesant, in 1655. Ten years later, when the English captured the Dutch possessions of New Netherlands, the Delaware territory came under

English rule. William Penn wanted an outlet to the sea for Pennsylvania and, in 1682, bought the territory of Delaware from the Duke of York.

129—Name of Delaware

From that time until the Revolution the two colonies had the same governor, although after 1703 they had separate legislatures. The first settlement of the Swedes, made in 1638, is the site of the present city of Wilmington. The colony was named in honor of an English Nobleman, Lord De La Warr.

130—The Carolinas. The Albemarle Colony



Charles II

It is strange that the Carolinas were called by the same name after two different Kings. The French who tried to settle this region in the sixteenth century, called it Carolina after their King Charles IX. A hundred years later the territory was still a wilderness, but, in 1651, English settlers from Virginia began a settlement there. A little later it was again called Carolina, this time in honor of Charles II of England. The people of the colony lived in the neighborhood of Albemarle sound. They called their settlement the Ablemarle Colony.

131—The Clarendon Colony

In 1663, King Charles II of England made a grant of terri-

tory between Virginia and Florida to his friend, Lord Clarendon and seven other noblemen. A colony was started, near Cape Fear River, by some Englishmen from the island of Barbadoes. It was called the Clarendon Colony.

132—The Carteret Colony

A settlement called the Carteret Colony was started, in 1670, and a town called Charleston was founded, on the Ashley River. Ten years later this town was moved to a place between the Ashley and Cooper rivers, the site of the present city of Charleston.

133—Form of Government

The proprietors tried to establish a form of government which called for lords and serfs (a kind of peasant slave). Most of the people were to be serfs, of course, but they laughed at such an idea and insisted on governing themselves. There were fights between the tenant colonists and the tax collectors. The proprietors became tired of all these troubles, and, in 1729, sold the colony back to the King. He divided it into two parts, North Carolina and South Carolina, and appointed a Governor for each.

134—Products

A sea captain, who came on a voyage from Madagascar, brought a bag of rice to Carolina. The grains were planted and flourished. Rice became a valuable product. Indigo, from which blue



Carolina settlers till the ground, with guns ready for Indian attack

dye is made, was also found to grow well here, and it was raised in considerable quantities at one time. Great forests of pine wood covered much of the land and they furnished timber as well as turpentine, pitch, and tar. The planters needed many slaves, and negroes were stolen from Africa, and sold into the Carolinas and Virginia.

CHAPTER XXI

PENNSYLVANIA AND GEORGIA

135—William Penn

Besides Puritans and Catholics, members of the Society of Friends, or Quakers, were persecuted in England on account



Penn's Treaty with the Indians

of their religion. William Penn, a rich English Quaker, was interested in America as one of the owners of New Jersey. Penn was the son of Admiral Penn to whom the English King Charles II owed a large sum of

money. After Admiral Penn's death William Penn offered to take land in America in payment of the debt. The King gave him thousands of acres of land lying west of the Delaware River.

The tract Penn wanted to call "Sylvania," which means "forest land." The King made him add his father's name to it, and it became Pennsylvania. In 1681, a colony was

started by a large number of immigrants from England. They were mostly Quakers, and Penn followed them a year later.

136—Philadelphia

The Quaker's religion taught him to consider every man his brother. So the first town, started in 1683, was called Philadelphia, which means "brotherly love." Soon after Penn arrived, he met the Indian chiefs under a large elm tree, near Philadelphia, and made a treaty of peace with them. This treaty was recorded in a belt of wampum which still exists. Peace was faithfully kept by both sides for many years.

The colony grew quickly and prospered, so that at the time of the Revolution, Philadelphia was the largest city in America.



A Wampum belt recording Penn's Treaty with the Indians

137—Mason and Dixon Line

In 1767, two surveyors, named Mason and Dixon, ran a boundary line to divide the colonies of Maryland and Pennsylvania. It was marked by a stone at the end of every mile, and was for many years the boundary between the free and the slave states.

138—Religion

William Penn granted religious freedom in the colony

even to Catholics, though he was opposed to the Catholic Church. Mass was offered up, as early as 1687, in a little wooden chapel in Philadelphia. Later the colonists changed the laws, and Catholics were not allowed to hold office.

139—Georgia. Oglethorpe's Colony

Georgia, the last of the thirteen original colonies, was not founded until 1733. George II was King of England,



The Georgia Colony (from an old print)

and it was named for him. At that time many people were imprisoned in England, because they could not pay their debts. A good hearted soldier, General James Oglethorpe, obtained a grant of land in America lying between South Carolina and Florida.

In 1733, Oglethorpe reached America with one hundred and twenty of these poor debtors, whom he and his friends had released from prison, by paying what they owed. Later, many Germans, Scotch, and even Jews, came to the Colony.

140—Savannah

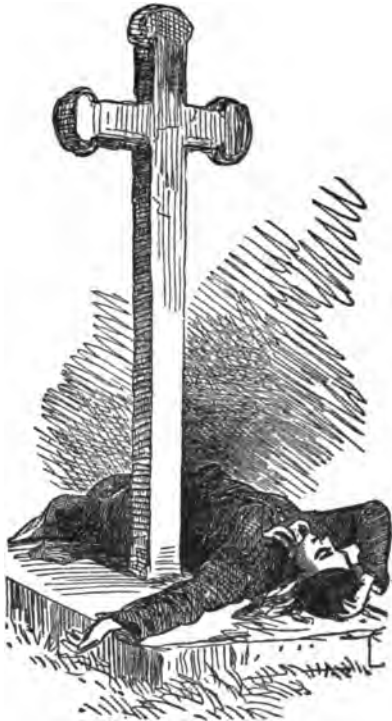
The first village started near the mouth of the Savannah River afterward became the City of Savannah. Silk manufacture was introduced and continued until the Revolution. Religious freedom was granted to all except to Catholics. In 1752, Georgia became a royal province.

CHAPTER XXII**THE CATHOLIC MISSIONARIES****141—The Missionaries**

There is no account in history more impressive than the story of the Catholic missionaries in America. They were true soldiers of God, who carried on their glorious work through hardship and danger and even torture. Thousands of poor savages received from them the knowledge of the True God. To impart this knowledge many of them willingly gave up their lives.

142—Our Debt to the Missionaries

To Catholic missionaries our own country also owes a great debt. It was



His life for the cross

they who discovered and explored much of the interior of this continent. The great historian Bancroft says, "Not a cape was turned, nor a river entered, but a Jesuit led the way." They were the first to sail over our great lakes and rivers, and to explore our forests and prairies.

143—Breboeuf

Among the early missionaries were the Jesuit Father Breboeuf and two companion priests. They journeyed to the country of the Huron Indians where they built a log house which served both as a church and dwelling. A clock, belonging to the good priests, was a source of great wonder to the Indians, who would sit for hours waiting to hear it strike. They imagined it was some kind of strange animal and wondered what kind of food it lived on. The good priests worked for years in the wilderness among the Indians. Finally all the tribe became Catholics.

144—Jesuits in Michigan

Father Jogues and a companion, both Jesuits, set out in 1641 to visit the Chippewas in Michigan. For seventeen days they pushed out into unknown parts, the first white men to traverse the country. They were well repaid at the end of their journey when two thousand friendly Indians gathered to listen to them.

145—Father Jogues in New York

After Father Jogues returned from the Chippewas in Michigan, he took up his work among the Hurons. A band of Iroquois warriors raided the Huron country and took about forty captives, among them Father Jogues. He was brought back to the present state of New York, where the Indians put him to torture, tearing out his nails and hacking off one of his thumbs. He was beaten and burned. His

limbs were twisted and his joints dislocated. The Iroquois kept Father Jogues a prisoner for more than a year, but during that time he used every opportunity to teach and convert his captors.

146—Ransom of Father Jogues

Finally the brave Jesuit was ransomed by the Dutch Governor of Albany, and sent to New Amsterdam, and thence to France. However he could not keep from his beloved Indians. In 1646, while again working among the Iroquois, he was martyred, near Caughnawaga, in New York.



147—Other Missionaries

Other priests, some of them from rich and noble families of France, were anxious to follow in the footsteps of Father Jogues. In 1648, Father Daniel, while saying Mass for Huron converts was killed at the foot of the altar. The Iroquois then massacred the Catholic Indians of his mission.

Three years later the renowned Father Breboeuf, and his

*O. Vostre bien humble s^r et
obéissant serviteur en N. S.*

Isaac Jogues

Portrait and Signature of Father Jogues

friend Father Lalement, were martyred by the same fierce savages. Breboeuf's mouth was crashed by a stone to stop his prayers. His nose and lips were cut off, and a burning brand was thrust into his mouth. Lalement was wrapped in pieces of bark which then were set on fire, and he was slowly roasted. At last his life was ended by the tomahawk.

148—Peace

After a fierce war with the Hurons, the Iroquois themselves begged for peace. The Onondagas were the first to ask for a priest, and Father Le Moyne was sent to them in 1655. He went to the village of Onondaga and, while on this mission, discovered the salt springs near Syracuse, New York.

He was followed by other priests, and the first Catholic chapel in New York was built near where Syracuse now stands (1655). The natives were so zealous that it was finished in a day. The pagan Indians again went on the war path, but the great chief Garacontie favored the Christians, and peace was restored. Garacontie himself became a Catholic, in 1669, and remained faithful until his death.

CHAPTER XXIII

MARQUETTE

149—Marquette

The work of the French priests took them gradually farther west. By 1671, they had established missions at the head of Lake Michigan. The station at Mackinaw on that lake was in charge of the Jesuit Father Marquette. The Indians often spoke to Father Marquette of a great river which was many days' travel away toward the setting sun. The savages called it Mississippi or "Father of Waters."

150—Search for the Great River

Father Marquette determined to search for these waters, in 1673, thinking he might reach the Pacific Ocean on them. He took with him a French trader named Joliet and five other companions, embarking in two canoes. Crossing Lake Michigan the explorers paddled up Green Bay and then to the head of the Fox River. Here they landed and carried their light canoes a short distance across country to another stream. This was the Wisconsin River and now, instead of paddling against the current, they floated easily down toward the river's mouth.



Father Marquette and Joliet

151—The Mississippi

In a week the explorers came to a broad and splendid river. The

"River of the Immaculate Conception" Marquette called it. It was indeed the Mississippi, the "Father of Waters," and the hearts of all were filled with joy and thanksgiving. On and on they floated, through a country of beautiful plains and noble forests, until the mouth of a river they named the Des Moines was reached. Here they rested for some days, while Father Marquette preached to the Indians of the tribe of "Illinois." They had heard of the

"Black Gown", as the priests were called, and welcomed him and begged him to stay with them. Marquette could not do this but promised to return.

152—Arkansas

Starting again, the little band paddled onward, passing the mouths of the Missouri and Ohio Rivers. At last a country where the "natives never saw snow" was reached. They had arrived at Arkansas and had reached that part of the country discovered by De Soto one hundred and thirty years before. Marquette learned from the natives that the Mississippi flowed into the Gulf of Mexico and not into the Pacific Ocean.

153—The Return

Eager to send the great news of the discoveries to Canada, Marquette turned and commenced the journey home. Another stop was made with the friendly Illinois, and then he pushed on to the mission at Green Bay. Joliet returned to Canada to tell of their journey, but Marquette remained to labor with the Indians.

154—Death of Marquette

A year later Marquette was made happy by being allowed to return to the Illinois. He journeyed down the Mississippi to Kaskaskia, but he was ill and suffered much on the way. The Indians welcomed him and listened gladly to his words and a mission was founded among them. Good Father Marquette could not stay with them long, for his health was broken by the work and hardships of the wilderness. He started to return, but the journey was too hard for his feeble body. When near the border of Lake Michigan, he could go no farther. Here the gentle Jesuit passed away, happy to die in God's holy work, and in the service of the Indians

he loved so well. A splendid statue of the saintly explorer has been erected by the State of Wisconsin in the Capitol at Washington.



Death of Father Marquette

CHAPTER XXIV

LA SALLE

155—La Salle

A few years after the exploration of the Mississippi, a Frenchman, named La Salle, determined to sail down that river to the Gulf of Mexico. He built a small sailing ship on the Niagara River and crossed the Great Lakes to Green Bay. Here La Salle and his companions, among whom were several priests, left their ship and sailed down Lake Michigan in canoes. They came to a spot where the great city of Chicago now stands, and paddled up the river of that name. Carrying their canoes from the Chicago to the Illinois River,

they floated down to the Mississippi. The weather was very cold and the river was coated with ice but the brave La Salle and his companions did not falter.

156—Country Claimed for France—Called Louisiana

As they journeyed down the great river landings were made, and the word of God was preached to the natives. Crosses were erected in many places, and the country was



Robert Cavalier De La Salle

claimed for France. In 1682, after two months on the Mississippi, La Salle reached the Gulf of Mexico. Great was his joy, and the Te Deum was chanted. A volley of musketry was fired, and La Salle took possession of the country for King Louis XIV, of France. In the King's honor he named the region Louisiana and claimed for him all the territory drained by the Mississippi River, and by the rivers flowing into it. This great territory of Louisiana reached

from the Alleghany Mountains to the Rocky Mountains, and from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico.

157—Death of La Salle

La Salle returned to Canada and then to France, where he told King Louis of his discoveries. The King sent him out again at the head of an expedition to settle and fortify Louisiana. He sailed into the Gulf of Mexico, but missed

the mouth of the Mississippi River, and landed in Texas. In 1687, while attempting to reach the Mississippi overland, La Salle was murdered by one of his own men. While the great La Salle was not a priest, he was a fervent Catholic, and in his explorations had ever in mind the advancement of his holy religion.

158—French Settlements

The French were not slow in settling the territory of Louisiana. In 1701, they founded Mobile, and New Orleans, in 1718. To control the passage between the Great Lakes, they built a fort in Detroit, in 1701. Along the Mississippi and Ohio forts and settlements were established.

The English held most of the coast of North America, and the French the interior. These two nations were soon to fight for the possession of the whole land.

159—End of the Colonization Period

At the end of the period of colonization the three great powers of England, France, and Spain controlled all of North America.

England's colonies stretched along the Atlantic from Florida to Nova Scotia, and back to the Alleghanies.

France owned Canada, and the vast valley of the Mississippi embraced in the Louisiana territory.

Spain held Florida and Mexico, which at that time included Texas and California.

Let us see what happened after all these regions had been settled.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION IV

1. Maryland was settled (1634) by English Catholics led by Lord Baltimore. He gave freedom to all who believed in Christ and the colony became the refuge of the persecuted.

2. The Swedes settled in Delaware, but the colony was soon taken by the Dutch. The English took Delaware at the time they captured New York.

3. Pennsylvania was settled by English Quakers under William Penn (1681).

4. The Carolinas were settled by the English (about 1665) who named the country after their King Charles II.

5. Georgia the last of the thirteen colonies, was settled by the English under General Oglethorpe, (1733). It was called after King George II.

6. The French settled in Canada, and their Catholic missionaries rapidly worked their way southward and westward. They labored with heroic sacrifice for the conversion of the Indians. The names of Fathers Jogues, Breboeuf and Lalement will forever be remembered as martyrs in this cause.

7. The French priests also did much valuable exploration. The Great Lakes, and the Salt Springs of New York, were discovered by them.

8. The first Catholic chapel in New York was built at an Indian mission (1655) near the present site of Syracuse.

9. The saintly Jesuit, Marquette, discovered the upper Mississippi and explored it as far south as Arkansas.

10. La Salle and his companions explored the Mississippi as far as the Gulf of Mexico. They gave the vast surrounding territory the name Louisiana, in honor of King Louis XIV, claiming it all for France.

BIOGRAPHIES

BIOGRAPHIES

Columbus

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS (Italian, Cristoforo Colombo; Spanish, Cristobal Colon) was born in Genoa, Italy, in 1440, and died in Valladolid, Spain, in 1506. His father was a wool comber and young Christopher helped him in his work. When the boy was 14 years old, he went to sea. Having made many voyages on the Mediterranean, he settled in Lisbon, Portugal, then the center of maritime enterprises. He supported himself by making maps and charts. Columbus gradually became convinced that the earth is a sphere; but he thought that it was much smaller than it is.

By sailing due west, the spice growing countries of Apango (Japan) and the Indies could be reached, he concluded. For help to fit out a ship to prove his theories, Columbus appealed vainly for years to the courts of Portugal, France, and Spain. Finally Queen Isabella the Catholic, of Spain, gave him two vessels and crews, and his friends added a third vessel, well manned. With these ships he discovered the new world, landing first on Watlings Island, which he called San Salvador, October 12, 1492. He made three more voyages to America, but died believing that he had found only the eastern shore of Asia.

Cabot

JOHN CABOT (Italian: Giovanni Caboto) was born in Genoa in 1450. He became a trader in spices, perfumes and other articles then brought from the Indies. Like Columbus he believed the earth to be a sphere. Under the patronage of Henry VII King of England, he sailed from

Bristol, England, in 1497, in a vessel that would seem tiny to-day. He reached land, probably Cape Breton, in the New World. On a second voyage he discovered the territory we now call Labrador. His greatest fame rests on the fact that he discovered the mainland of North America.

Vespucci

AMERIGO VESPUCCI, a navigator and explorer, was born in Florence, Italy, in 1451, and died in Seville, Spain, in 1512. On a voyage he made to the east coast of South America, in 1499, he followed the track of the third voyage of Columbus. After the death of Columbus the members of the Strassburg Academy of Cosmography believing that Amerigo Vespucci had discovered the continent, voted that his name "America" should be given to the New World. Thus Columbus was wrongfully deprived of an honor belonging to him.

Las Casas

BARTHOLOME DE LAS CASAS is a name that will be held in the highest honor while men love humanity and justice. A priest of the Dominican order, he labored for fifty years in mission work among the natives of the Spanish provinces in the New World. All his active life was devoted to freeing the Indians, who had been forced to work as slaves on plantations, and in gold and silver mines. He was the first "abolitionist" (one who would free slaves) of America. Protestants as well as Catholics pay homage to his memory and his untiring efforts in behalf of the Indians.

Cortes

HERNANDO CORTES, is one of the greatest names connected with Spanish history in America. Born at Medellin, Spain, in 1485, he removed to the New World in 1504. With a force of 700 men and ten small cannon he sailed, in

1519, to conquer Mexico, a country then but very recently discovered. After fighting many battles with the natives (Aztec Indians), he forced his way into Mexico City and made the Emperor Montezuma a prisoner. The Emperor died of grief and the enraged people, probably 50,000 in number, drove out the Spaniards. Many of these were killed. But outside the city Cortes rallied the rest, induced other Indian tribes to help him, and laid siege to the place. Again he captured it, and Spain held it for over 300 years. Cortes died in Seville, Spain, in 1547. Steadfastness of purpose was the chief feature of his character.

Cartier

JACQUES CARTIER was the navigator and explorer who brought the great region we call Canada to the attention of civilized Europe. His exploration, however, did not bear fruit till nearly a hundred years after his voyage up the St. Lawrence River. He sailed up this great river thinking it was a passage way to China. The memory of this fact is preserved in the name of the rapids which stopped the vessel's progress—*La Chine*. These are near Montreal, where Cartier landed and found an Indian village called Hochelaga. Cartier returned to France and vainly urged the great value of founding French settlements in the newly explored territory. This far-seeing explorer was born in St. Milo, France, in 1494, and died in the same city, in 1557.

Champlain

SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN, the "Father of Canada" was born at Bronage, in France, and made his first voyage to Canada in 1603 and his second in 1608, when he founded Quebec. He discovered the lake which bears his name; explored much of the Great Lakes region; made maps of the country and began various settlements there. In 1620,

Champlain became governor of Canada, or, as it was then called, New France. He died at Quebec in 1633. Brave, honorable, pious, and capable, he did more for Canada than any other one of its French colonial governors.

Hudson

HENRY HUDSON, an English sea captain, won lasting fame by his exploration work in North America. Commissioned by a London Company to look for a water route through the New World to the Indies, he examined the east shore of Greenland but found no such water way. The Dutch East India Company employed him, in 1609, for the same purpose. He crossed the Atlantic in a small vessel, called the Half Moon, and searched for the Northwest Passage along the United States coast from Chesapeake Bay to Long Island. Entering New York Harbor, he sailed up the Hudson River to where Albany now stands. Then finding the Hudson was a river, and not a passage through the continent, he returned to Europe. Once more, in 1610, in an endeavor to discover the water passage he sailed through the strait and into the great bay now bearing his name (Hudson Bay).

Dongan

THOMAS DONGAN, was born at Castletown, Ireland, in 1634. Appointed in 1682, Governor of New York, Dongan gave the city of New York a liberal charter, which is still the base of much of the city's fundamental law. Its most praiseworthy guarantee is freedom of religion to all. This right Dongan, himself a Catholic, granted without being asked. Falsely accused of inciting the Five Nations to war against the French in Canada, Governor Dongan resigned his office. Later, he returned to Ireland where he inherited the earldom of Limerick. He died in London Dec. 14, 1715.

SECTION V

COLONIAL WARS. DISCONTENT

CHAPTER XXV

INDIAN WARS

160—The Pequod War

The Connecticut River settlements had hardly been started when trouble with the Indians began. The Pequods, a warlike tribe of Indians, went on the warpath, in 1637, and threatened the colony. The colonists resolved to attack them and settle the matter once for all. Seven hundred of the Pequods were gathered in a fort on the Mystic River. The English attacked at daybreak, while the Indians slept. The barking of a dog awoke the Indians, but it was too late. Captain Mason seized a fire brand and threw it over the wooden stockade (fence) and the wigwams of the Indians caught fire. Hundreds of them were burned, and those who tried to run away were shot. The whole tribe was wiped out.

161—Peace and Growth

This short but fierce war ended the Indian trouble in New England for a long time. The country was now considered safe. Many other settlers arrived, and New England grew rapidly.

162—King Philip's War

Massasoit, the friendly Indian Chief who had welcomed the English to America, died in 1660. His son Alexander

became chief but died soon after. The Indians believed his death had been caused by the Englishmen. Philip, another son of Massasoit, then became king of the Wampanoags and prepared to make war on the white men. He felt that the Indians were being cheated out of their lands, and that



The Pequot War

the colonists should be driven back to England. In 1675, the Indians went on the war path.

A cruel war ensued which continued for two years. The Indians attacked the settlements and slew the colonists and burned their homes.

163—The Swamp Fight

At last the Indians were cornered in a swamp in Rhode Island. A desperate fight took place, the Indians were beaten, and their wigwams and supplies all burned. The tribe of Narragansetts was also attacked by the colonists and almost exterminated.

This ended the Indian wars in New England. All that were left of the red men were forced to leave their lands and go farther into the wilderness.

164—Indian Wars in the South

The colonists in the Carolinas went through similar experiences with the Indians and for the same reasons—because they were harsh and cruel to the natives who fought and massacred them in return.

The Tuscarora War (1711),*

The Yemassee War (1715),

The Cherokee War (1757), were cruel on both sides but always resulted in the same way—in the victory of the colonists and the forcing of the Indians farther back into the country.

CHAPTER XXVI

WARS BETWEEN FRENCH AND ENGLISH

165—King Williams' War

In 1689, the English people drove King James II from the throne. In his place they invited William of Orange to be their King. King James fled to France and war was declared between France and England. France offered to keep peace in America, but England refused, and Canada and the English colonies in America took up the fight. The Iroquois Indians of New York sided with the English. All the other Indian tribes fought for the French.

166—Massacres of the War

The French and their Indian friends overran the northern settlements of the English and massacred the inhabitants.

*When the Tuscaroras were defeated they went north to New York and joined the Indian Confederacy known as the Five Nations, thenceforth the Six Nations.

Dover, New Hampshire, was attacked and the settlers were killed or captured. In the middle of the night a force of French and Indians fell upon Schenectady, N. Y. and captured it. Sixty-three of the colonists were killed.



The massacre at Lachine

167—Lachine

In the meantime the savage Iroquois invaded Canada and massacred two hundred French at the village of Lachine, near Montreal. Many of the captives were scalped. Montreal was taken and held for some months.

For eight years, until 1697, this bloody war was kept up. At the end no territory had been gained by either side.

168—Queen Anne's War

Five years after peace was declared, another war in Europe brought strife to America. The English queen, Anne, had declared war against France and Spain. New England was attacked by the Canadians, and the English of the Carolinas gave battle to the Spanish in Florida. In 1702, the English captured St. Augustine but retreated when two

Spanish men of war entered the harbor. The next year they attacked the Spanish Indian missions in Florida, destroying the towns and killing the priests and many Indians. Others were sold as slaves in the West Indies.

169—The War in the North

In 1704, a party of French and Indians fell on the English at Deerfield, in Massachusetts, and massacred fifty of them. One hundred were taken prisoners and set out on a three hundred miles march to Canada, during the cold New England winter. Those who could not keep up were tomahawked and scalped.

The war lasted for eleven years, until 1713. The result of it was that Acadia became an English colony. Its name was changed to Nova Scotia, which means New Scotland. Port Royal became Annapolis, in honor of Queen Anne.



Queen Anne

170—The Abnaki

During Queen Anne's War the English tried to get the Abnaki Indians of Maine to remain neutral. These Indians were Catholics and sided with the French. They were attacked several times by the New Englanders, and finally, in 1704, a party of Englishmen and Mohawk Indians fell

upon their village. Father Rasle, their aged missionary, rushed from the chapel only to be met by a volley of bullets. Seven chiefs were killed. The bodies of all were mangled, and the church was burned.



A cruel warfare

171—King George's War

Again a European war spread to America. It was called King George's War because George II was King of England. It lasted four years (1744-1748), and its principal event was the cap-

ture of Louisburg, a French fortress on Cape Breton Island. This was effected by New England troops, helped by an English force. This fort was supposed to be very strong and had cost a great deal of money, but it fell before the brave New Englanders. At the end of the war Louisburg was returned to France.

172—Results

We see that the total result of the three wars of King William, Queen Anne, and King George, was that England acquired Nova Scotia (Acadia) from the French.

CHAPTER XXVII

FRENCH AND ENGLISH RIVALRIES

173—French and English Claims

The time was now coming when either France or England would have to give away in America. The French claimed all the territory beyond the Alleghany mountains, by right of discovery and exploration. They had established more than sixty forts and posts in this region, and were prepared to fight for their claims. The English colonies also claimed this territory. They had received charters for it from their Kings, and had purchased it from the Indians.

174—French Colonization

It is well to know a little about the different methods of colonization practiced by the French and English. The French sent out to America comparatively few people, who spread over a large expanse of territory which they held by building forts. They did not interfere with the pursuits of the Indians, and did not seek to make homes for themselves in the country, but only to hold it for their King.

175—English Colonization

On the other hand the English kept together and established thickly settled communities. They drove away the Indians, conquered the forest and made settlements. Each man was out to establish a permanent home. The French were acting for their King. The English colonists were acting for themselves, and had come to make new and lasting homes.

176—Results

When the final struggle came the result of these different systems was seen in the fact that the French had only abo

80,000 people in North America while the English had 1,160,000.

177—Ohio Company

In 1750, a large grant of land along the Ohio River was made by the English King to the Ohio Company, and surveyors went out to measure it. The French occupied the territory and were rapidly building new forts farther east.

178—George Washington

About that time there lived in Virginia a young man named George Washington. He was born in 1732, and came from one of the best



Washington and his mother

families in the colonies. As a boy he wanted to be a sailor, but his mother objected, and he became a surveyor instead. He travelled all through the wilderness surveying the country, and was often in danger of his life. On reaching manhood, Washington joined a military company and soon became a Major.

He was a fine looking young man, tall and well built, and was known to be cool and fearless.

179—Washington's Mission

So Governor Dinwiddie chose Major Washington to carry a message to the French commander in the Ohio district, to ask him to withdraw his troops.

The French commander at Fort Le Boeuf, in northwest

Pennsylvania, received Washington pleasantly but refused to leave the country.



Major Washington on his trip to the French commander

180—Washington's Return

On the return trip to Virginia Washington met with many dangers. Snow and ice made travelling dangerous. His horse gave out, and he was obliged to walk. While crossing a river on a raft of logs, he was thrown into the icy waters and nearly drowned. An Indian shot at him from ambush but missed him. In spite of all these dangers Washington reached home safely and reported the failure of his mission. He also urged the great importance of gaining the territory along the Ohio River. Washington realized that the upper Ohio River was the gateway to the great West. Seeing the future need of the colonies for expansion in that direction, he was anxious that this gateway should be held by the English.

CHAPTER XXVIII

THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR

181—French and Indian War

A war now started which lasted nine years, from 1754 to 1763. The Americans attempted to build a fort on the site now occupied by the city of Pittsburgh. Washington was sent with a force to help them. Before he arrived the French drove them away and completed the work, calling it Fort Duquesne. A large force of the French attacked Washington at a stockade he had built and called Fort Necessity. He fought bravely, but was compelled to surrender. Washington and his men were allowed to keep their arms and to return to Virginia.



Albany in olden times

182—Albany Convention

A convention of the colonies was called at Albany, in 1754, to make a treaty with the Iroquois Indians. Benjamin

Franklin proposed that the colonies unite with one another under a President General, to be appointed by the English Government. The colonies refused this plan because it gave too much power to the President General. The English government refused it because it gave too much power to the colonists. So Franklin thought it must be a very good half way measure. The Albany Convention had a good effect in making the colonists better acquainted with one another.



Death of Braddock—Washington takes command

183—March against Fort Duquesne

The great "Seven Years War" now started in Europe, and France and England hurried soldiers to America. As usual the Iroquois Indians took part with the English, while the other Indians fought for the French. The English General Braddock, with fourteen hundred British regulars, set out, in 1755, to capture Fort Duquesne. Washington,

now a Colonel, went with the expedition. Braddock believed the British troops were the finest in the world and that nothing could beat them. Washington tried to explain that fighting in America was different from fighting in Europe, but Braddock would not listen to him.

184—Braddock's Defeat

The redcoats marched along in solid ranks and even refused to send out scouts to see if the enemy was near. The French and Indians, knowing the path Braddock would take, hid themselves behind trees and bushes and waited in ambush. Then, without notice, the French poured a hail of bullets into the British ranks. The English did not know how to fight a foe they could not see, and a panic followed. Braddock was mortally wounded. What was left of his

army was saved by Washington and his colonial troops.



The Acadians seek comfort from their priest
ful and allowed to remain. Now however the English

185—The Expulsion of the Acadians, 1755

During Queen Anne's War the English had taken Acadia and called it Nova Scotia. But the French inhabitants of the region were peace-

claimed to fear that the Acadians would take sides with the French. With that excuse the English committed one of the most cruel acts in history. Sending troops and a fleet to the peaceful country, they carried away seven thousand of these quiet people, to different settlements along the Atlantic coast. They were set on shore at various places, without money or friends, and without regarding family ties. Parents and children, sisters and brothers, husbands and wives, were separated, never to meet again. Longfellow's beautiful poem "Evangeline" tells of the sufferings of the Acadians.

186—French Successes

General Montcalm, a great commander, was now in charge of the French forces and during the next two years won many victories. In 1757, he attacked the English at Fort William Henry and captured it. The English were promised a safe retreat to Fort Edward. However they had no sooner left the fort than the Indian allies of the French fell on them and the retreat became a massacre. The French officers did all in their power to save them, but the blood-thirsty Indians could not be held in check.

187—William Pitt

William Pitt, a true friend of the American colonies, came into power in England, in 1757. He rushed more troops and new generals to America and raised a colonial force as well. A spirited campaign was started, in 1758. Louisburg, the great stronghold on Cap Breton Island, with six thousand French prisoners in it, was captured. Washington led a force against Fort Duquesne, and this time was successful. The fort was taken, and the settlement named Pittsburgh, in honor of the English statesman.

188—Quebec

The final blow of the war was aimed at Quebec, in 1759. The French forts in northern New York were easily taken by the English, and then a force of 8,000 men under General Wolf sailed up the St. Lawrence to assault Quebec, the greatest fortress in America. It was built on a high bluff which seemed impossible to climb. In vain the English looked for a way to reach the top. At length Wolf discovered a narrow path leading to the heights.



Quebec—The death of General Wolf

189—Death of Montcalm and Wolf

During the night the British silently climbed that path in single file. When the day came, the French were astounded to find the enemy drawn up in battle line on the "Plains of Abraham." The forces were evenly matched, and a fierce battle started (September 13). The English were victorious but both Montcalm and Wolf, the brave commanders, were killed.

190—Results

Peace was declared in 1763. The French King ceded to England all the territory France claimed east of the Mississippi River. Spain gave Florida to England. France gave Spain all the French territory west of the Mississippi.

191—Conspiracy of Pontiac

The Indians hated the English, their new rulers, and many of the tribes united in a plan to overthrow them. Their



Pontiac addressing his Indian Allies

leader was a chief called Pontiac. On a certain date the Indians fell upon the various English forts in the valley of the Great Lakes and captured almost all of them. Pontiac however, was defeated in a scheme to massacre the garrison at Detroit. He then laid siege to the fort, but failed to capture it, and the uprising collapsed.

CHAPTER XXIX

CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION

192—Causes of the Revolution

When the English colonists came to America they were looking for freedom. They expected to be fairly treated by the mother country. They had a great affection for England and no thought of ever separating from her. Besides they were more or less dependent on England. Now, however, the French had been driven out of America, and the colonists had no longer anything to fear from them. The Americans had proved themselves to be good fighters and to have good officers.

193—Navigation Acts

During the French and Indian War, and at its conclusion, laws were passed in England which were thought unjust by the colonies. The Navigation Act forced the colonies to employ only English ships in trading with foreign countries. The colonists owned many fine vessels and were not able to use them when this law was enforced.

194—Acts of Trade

Then the Acts of Trade forced the colonists to sell all their produce to English merchants and forbade the manufacture of many articles in the colonies. So that an American might raise sheep, and have quantities of wool, but could not have it made into cloth in the colonies. He would have to send the wool to England to have it spun or woven. And so it was with iron, of which there was plenty in Pennsylvania; and with tar and turpentine, obtained in the forests of the Carolinas. These laws were most unjust to the colonists. They were all in favor of the English manufacturer and merchant.

195—George the Third

George the Third had now become king, and he determined to make the colonists pay for the great cost of the French and Indian War. He said it had been fought for their benefit and that they should pay for it. Now the Colonies were not unwilling to help pay this debt, but they wanted to do so in their own way. They wanted to have their own assemblies levy the tax. They objected to Parliament taxing them because they were not represented in Parliament. If they were going to pay taxes they wanted some say in the matter. "Taxation without representation is tyranny" became their slogan. The colonists did not ask for representation in Parliament. They simply claimed that Parliament should tax Great Britain, and that the Colonial Assemblies should tax the Colonies.

196—Stamp Act (1765)

This was a law compelling the colonists to put stamps on all legal papers. These stamps were of different values and were sold by the English Government, so they were a tax. When this law was passed the colonists were infuriated. English office holders were mobbed, and the Americans agreed to use no articles made in England. When the stamps arrived church bells were tolled, flags put at half mast, and the day made one of mourning. Then in many places the stamps were seized and torn



Pulling down a statue of King George

up or burned. Patrick Henry, a young lawyer, thrilled the country by a speech in the Virginia Assembly denouncing the British king.



Patrick Henry denounces the British King

197—Repeal of Stamp Act

The British government now foolishly thought that it was the Stamp Act that was making the trouble and so they repealed it, in 1766, a year after it was made. Parliament however still claimed the right to tax the colonies, and taxes were put on tea, glass,

paints and other things. Soldiers were sent out to America to enforce the taxes. To make matters worse the Military Act was passed, in 1768. This act made the colonists give food and shelter to the soldiers that were sent to coerce them.

198—Boston Massacre

The colonists hated the English soldiers, and many quarrels took place. The soldiers were brutal and insolent; and, in 1770, a serious clash occurred in Boston. The British fired into a crowd of men, killing three and wounding two.

War commenced to be talked of, and the desire for union amongst the colonies was strong.



The Boston Massacre

199—Tea Tax 1773

Again Parliament made a mistake. Fearing the temper of the Americans, they took off the tax on everything except tea. It was even arranged that tea could be bought cheaper in America, including the tax, than it could in England, tax free. The English thought the Americans only cared for the money loss by taxation. They were mistaken. The Americans cared more for their rights and principles than for any amount of money.

200—Boston Tea Party

When the tea began to arrive, there was trouble. In Philadelphia and New York the people turned the tea

bearing vessels out of the harbor. In Boston the English officers would not allow this. So a party of men dressed themselves up as Indians, painted their faces, boarded the ship at night, and dumped the tea overboard into the harbor.

The English of course considered that they had been defied by the colonists, and some very severe laws were passed. By one of these the port of Boston was closed to ships, and the government moved to Salem. Much distress ensued, and the other colonies came to Boston's help with supplies.

201—Quebec Act, 1774

A law was passed by the British Parliament extending the Quebec province south to the Ohio Valley and west to the Mississippi, and granting freedom of worship to Catholics in that territory. It was passed to keep the French Canadian Catholics loyal to England in case of trouble with the colonies. This was a strange step for Parliament to take, for while the laws of England persecuted Catholics in Ireland, it favored them in Quebec. The Colonies resented the Quebec Act, because they claimed the Ohio territory belonged to them, according to their charters.

202—First Congress

The "Intolerable Acts," as these new laws were called, made the Americans more determined than ever to stand up for their rights. A Congress, called on Sept. 5, 1774, met in Philadelphia. All the colonies, except Georgia, were represented by their ablest men. Nothing was said as to independence, but Congress resolved that the recent laws of Parliament were null and void, and issued a protest against keeping armies quartered on the people.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION V**1. The principal colonial Indian Wars were:**

The Pequod War in Connecticut 1637

King Philip's War in Massachusetts 1675

The Tuscarora War, 1711

The Yernassee War, 1715

The Cherokee War, 1757

The last three were in the Southern Colonies. They were all cruel and all resulted the same way—in the victory of the whites.

2. "King William's War" started in Europe and spread to America, where the English colonists took up arms against the French in Canada. It lasted eight years (1689-97), was cruel on both sides, and resulted in no change of territory.

3. "Queen Anne's War" involved England, France, and Spain, and their colonies in America. It lasted eleven years, (1702-13), and resulted in the capture of Acadia by the English. They changed its name to Nova Scotia (New Scotland).

4. "King George's War," lasted four years (1744 to 1748). The English captured the strong French fortress of Louisburg on Cape Breton Island but returned it at the end of the war.

5. Both the English and French claimed the territory at the head of the Ohio River. George Washington first appears in history when he was sent by the English to demand the withdrawal of the French from that territory.

6. The refusal of the French to leave this territory led to the "French and Indian War." This lasted nine years (1754-63) and resulted in the cession to England of Canada and all the French territory east of the Mississippi.

7. The English Parliament wanted to tax the American Colonies to help pay the cost of this war. The colonists were willing to pay, but claimed their own Assemblies should impose the tax. Parliament would not agree, and imposed a tax by passing the Stamp Act.

8. The colonists refused to use the stamps and destroyed them. Parliament repealed the Stamp Act, but imposed other taxes which the colonists also refused to pay. Finally all taxes, except that on tea, were taken off.

9. The Colonists refused to pay this tax and threw the tea overboard, or ordered the tea-laden ships from their harbors.

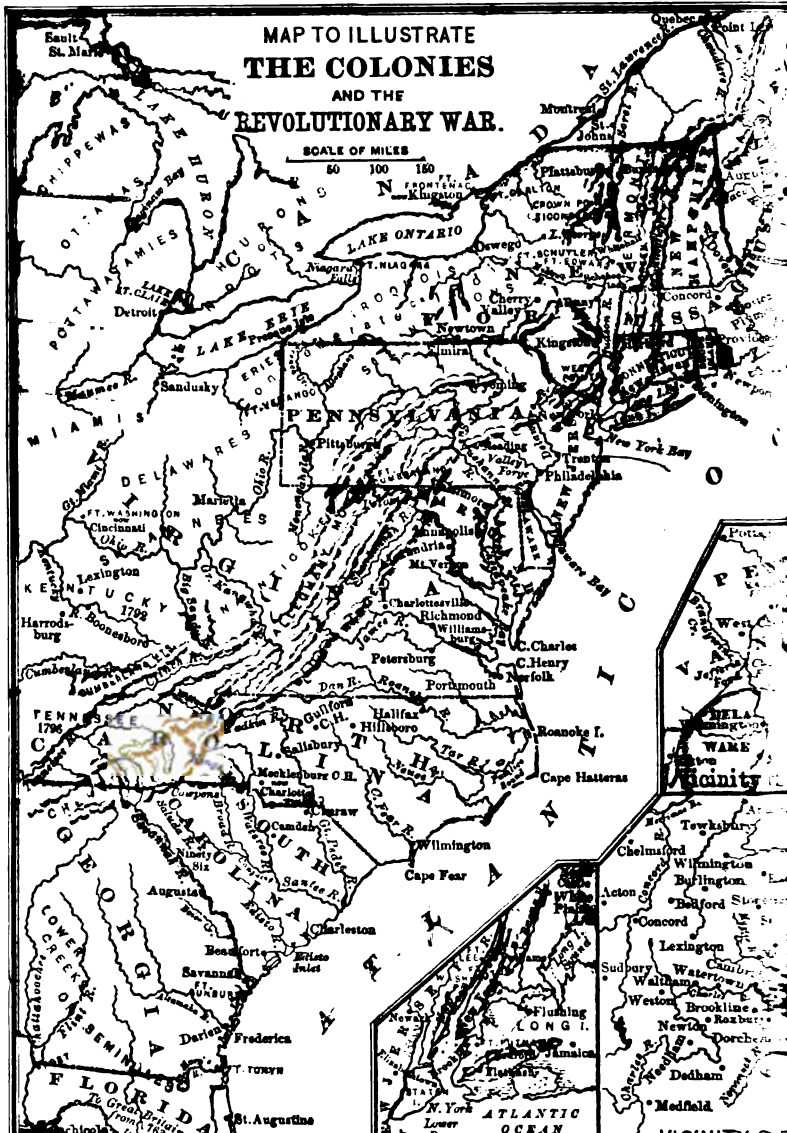
Then Parliament passed very severe laws called the Five Intollerable Acts. The port of Boston was closed and troops were quartered on the people.

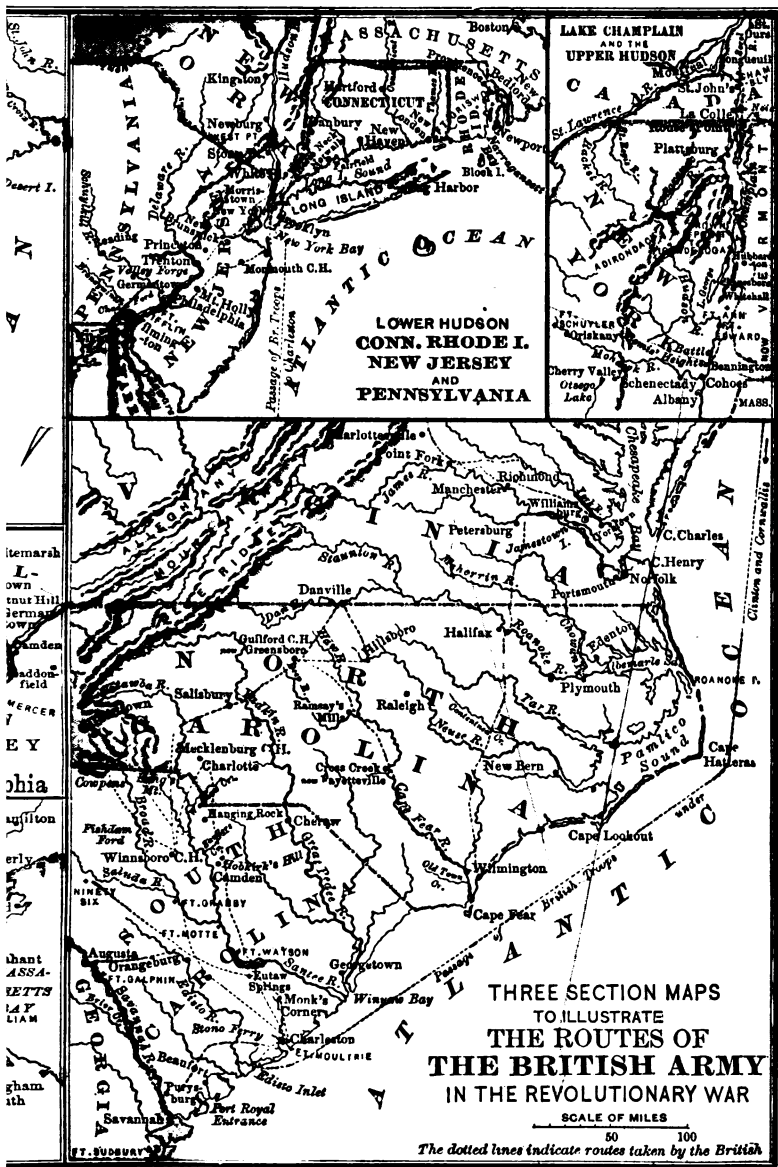
10. A Congress was called and met at Philadelphia Sept. 5, 1774. All the colonies but Georgia were represented and resolutions were passed declaring the hated laws of Parliament null and void. Great excitement prevailed throughout the country.

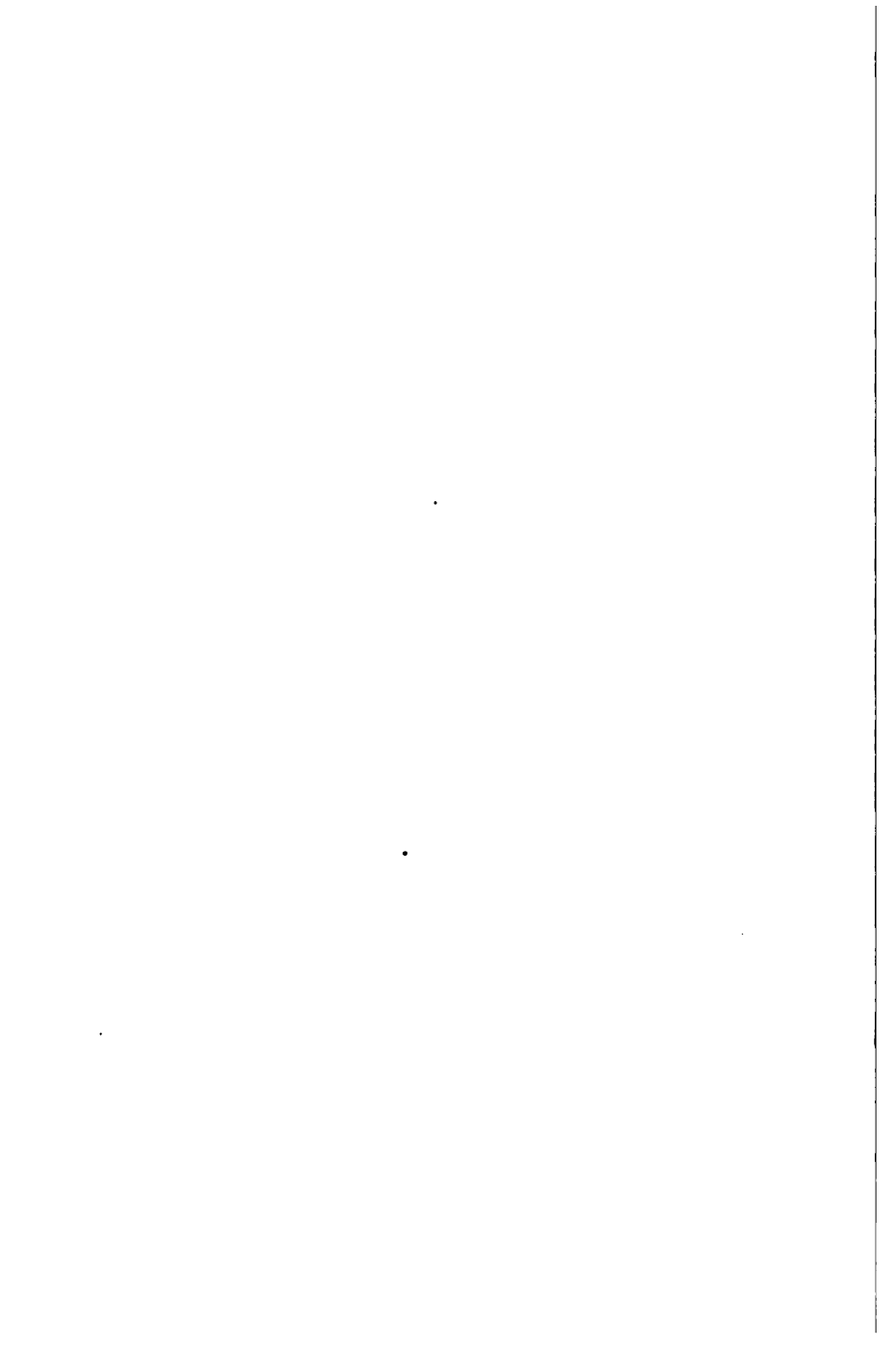
MAP TO ILLUSTRATE THE COLONIES AND THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

SCALE OF MILES

50 100 150







SECTION VI

THE REVOLUTION

CHAPTER XXX

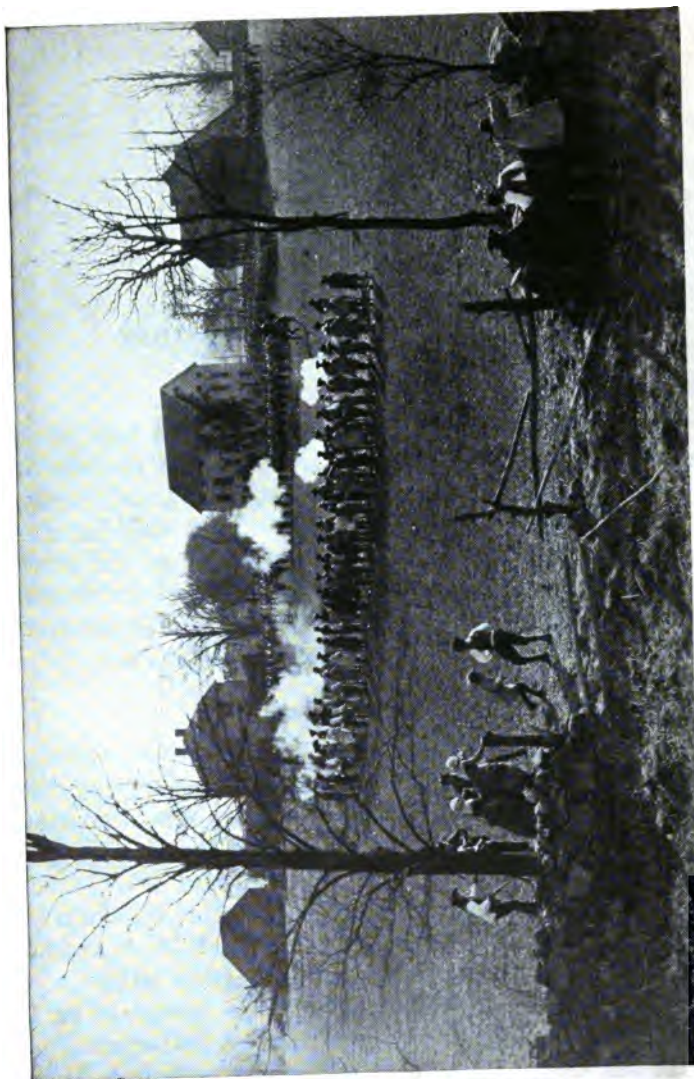
THE WAR OF THE REVOLUTION

203—Preparations

In the meantime General Gage in Boston had become alarmed and seized powder and arms wherever he could find them. The Americans had long been drilling and bands of "Minute Men" had been formed. They were so called because they had pledged themselves to fight the British soldiers at a minute's notice. It was arranged that lanterns should be hung in a Boston church steeple whenever the British made an unfriendly move from Boston.

204—Battle of Lexington, Apr. 19, 1775

General Gage heard that the Americans were collecting arms and ammunition at Concord, a village twenty miles from Boston. That night two lighted lanterns were placed in the tower window of the old North Church in Boston. They told the Americans that the British were moving. Paul Revere, an American patriot, mounted his horse and set out on a wild ride to alarm the countryside. The next morning, when the British reached the town of Lexington, a little company of Minute Men were drawn up on the village green. The British fired a volley, and seven Americans fell dead. The War of the Revolution had commenced.



© International Newsreel Co.

Battle of Lexington

205—Concord

The British pushed on to Concord but could not find the stores of guns and powder. Here another band of Americans gave them battle, and "fired the shot heard 'round the world." The news of the fight spread and the whole countryside was soon in arms. Every man and boy that could hold a gun came running to take a shot at the enemy. From behind fences, trees, and hedges they poured their fire, and nearly every Yankee shot brought a Red Coat down. The retreat became a massacre and only the arrival of fresh troops from Boston saved the remnant of the force. Three hundred English soldiers were left dead or wounded along the roadside.

206—The Effect

The effect of this fight was wonderful. Volunteers rushed to arms all over the country. Twelve thousand patriots surrounded Boston and shut the British in. Meetings were called in each colony, and the royal governors were expelled.

207—Fort Ticonderoga

A company of farmers from Vermont called "Green Mountain Boys," under Ethan Allen, surprised Fort Ticonderoga, on May 10th, and demanded its surrender. "By what authority," demanded the British commandant. "In the name of the great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," replied Allen. The fort was then surrendered with large stores of guns and powder and not an American was lost.

208—Bunker Hill

Bunker Hill overlooked the city of Boston from across the Charles River. The British determined to fortify it, but on the morning of June 17th found they were too late.



Capture of Fort Ticonderoga

During the night the Americans under General Prescott had thrown up earthworks on the top of Breed's Hill, an elevation near Bunker Hill. General Howe crossed the river with three thousand men to drive them out.

209—The Battle

The Americans lay silently behind their breastworks. They were ordered not to fire until they saw the "whites of the enemy's eyes." The English charged up the hill in solid ranks with fixed bayonets. They came within a few yards of the top. Every American had picked his man. At the command of "Fire" a hail of bullets mowed down the ranks of the enemy, and drove them to the bottom of the hill. Again the British charged and again they were repulsed. A third time they were ordered up the hill. The ammunition of the Americans was exhausted. They had no bayonets,



Battle of Bunker Hill

but clubbed their muskets and fought desperately. They were driven from the hill, but retired in good order.

210—Result

Although this first regular battle was a defeat for the Americans its effect was as good as a victory. They had beaten the British while their ammunition lasted, and, man for man, they knew they need not fear the enemy.

CHAPTER XXXI

WASHINGTON TAKES COMMAND

211—Second Continental Congress

In the meantime a second meeting of Congress had been held in Philadelphia. The colonies were still willing to make fair terms with the King and sent him a petition. He refused to receive it. So Congress voted to raise twenty thousand men, and appointed George Washington Commander-in-Chief of the Army.

212—Washington in Command

Washington hastened to Boston and on the way was told of the brave fight of the Americans at Bunker Hill. "Then our liberties are safe" he said. Washington took command of the army on July 3, 1775. All he could do at first was drill his soldiers and keep the British shut up in Boston. He did not have any big guns with which to bombard the city.

213—Invasion of Canada

In the late summer of 1775, two small American armies started out to invade Canada. One army under General Montgomery went up Lake Champlain and captured Mont-

real. It then moved on to Quebec. Here Montgomery was joined by Benedict Arnold with what remained of a force of men who had started from Maine. They had gone up the Kennebec River and struck out through the wilderness to Quebec. They arrived starving and half frozen. Altogether the two armies had about one thousand men who were able to fight.

the staff and fell outside the fort. Sergeant Jasper jumped outside where the shot and shell were thickly flying and recovered the flag.

219—General Feeling of the People

There was now a feeling among patriotic men that things had gone too far for them ever to submit



214—Attack On Quebec

After some weeks of siege the armies attacked Quebec during a blinding snow storm. The brave Montgomery fell in the first charge. Arnold was wounded, and the Americans withdrew.

215—Aid from Abnaki

Washington asked the help of the Catholic Indians living in Maine. The Indians under chief Orano agreed to help the Americans, and then a strange thing happened. The New England Puritans who had persecuted these Indians,

and even killed their priest, did all in their power to get a French Catholic Missionary for them.

216—Commissioners to Canada

The Americans were anxious to get the French Canadians to join them in fighting England. So they sent Benjamin Franklin, Samuel Chase, Charles Carroll, and Father (afterward Bishop) John Carroll to ask their aid. The French

CHAPTER XXXI

WASHINGTON TAKES COMMAND

211—Second Continental Congress

In the meantime a second meeting of Congress had been held in Philadelphia. The colonies were still willing to make fair terms with the King and sent him a petition. He refused to receive it. So Congress voted to raise twenty thousand men, and appointed George Washington Commander-in-Chief of the Army.

212—Washington in Command

~~Boston. Howe did not take Boston, and on the way was told~~
Boston. Howe did not take Boston, and on the way was told and his friends the Tories, on board the fleet and left on St. Patrick's Day, 1776. The Tories were Americans who took sides with the British. They all went to Halifax, in Nova Scotia, and Washington and his army marched into Boston.

218—Attack on Fort Moultrie

Early in the summer, of 1776, the British fleet attacked the fort which guarded the city of Charleston. The fort was built of palmetto logs and the British cannon balls sank into the soft wood and did no damage. The Americans under the brave Colonel Moultrie were splendid marksmen.

With no ammunition to waste they fired slowly and carefully and every shot counted. Their execution was heavy and the enemy's ships were badly damaged and forced to sail away. The fort was then named Fort Moultrie after its brave commander.

During the battle the flag of South Carolina was shot away from the staff and fell outside the fort. Sergeant Jasper jumped outside where the shot and shell were thickly flying and recovered the flag.



219—General Feeling of the People

There was now a feeling among patriotic men that things had gone too far for them ever to submit

to the King again. Of course not everyone

Sergeant Jasper braves shot and shell to save the flag

felt this way. There were still large numbers of loyalists, or Tories, as the patriots called them. These people were loyal to the King; some because they thought it right, and others because such loyalty paid them better. But the greater part of the people were in sympathy with the revolt.

And those who were not were held up to shame and ridicule by their neighbors, and in many cases were forced to leave their homes and take refuge with the English, or move farther into the wilderness.



DRAFTING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE
Franklin, Jefferson, Adams, Livingston, and Sherman

CHAPTER XXXII
DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

220—Declaration of Independence

Congress was in session, and among its members patriots were in the great majority. Early in the summer a resolution of the greatest importance was introduced. It was to the effect "that the United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states." This resolution passed,



Reading the Declaration of Independence at Philadelphia

and the "Declaration of Independence" which gave birth to a new nation was drawn up. Thomas Jefferson was the author of this epoch-making document. It was adopted on July 4, 1776, which thus became our first "Independence Day." The great news was received with joy throughout the land. However there were years of hard fighting and great suffering to be endured before freedom was finally won.

221—Hessians

When England realized America would fight, she looked around for men to fill her army. Not enough of her own men would enlist. The pay was too small, and the hardships and dangers were too great. So the English tried to hire European troops. They offered a large sum to Russia for an army of Cossacks, but were refused. Finally the Prince of Hesse-Cassel and some other nearby Princes offered to sell some of their troops. During the war thirty



Hessian soldiers with their peculiar head dress

thousand of these troops came out to fight the Americans. They were called Hessians. Finally Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, who greatly admired Washington, refused to allow the Hessians to cross his country to get to America, and no more were sent. Throughout all this selling of men to fight the

Americans, the Catholic Princes of Germany refused to have anything to do with the disgraceful practice.

222—New York

From the time the British under General Howe had gone

to Halifax from Boston, there had been no English soldiers in the American colonies. But Washington knew this would not last long and felt sure the next attack would be on New York. This city was hard for the Americans to hold, because cannon placed on the Brooklyn Heights, across the East River, could blow it to pieces. And besides, the English ships could sail up the river on each side and destroy the city with their guns. Some patriots wanted to burn New York and lay waste the whole country around that it might not afford a livelihood to the British. But Washington decided to try and hold the city. He left Boston with his army and took up a position on Brooklyn Heights.



223—Battle of Long Island

The British landed a large force at Gravesend Bay, Long Island, near where Coney Island now is. More than half of this force were Hessians. There were many more British soldiers than Americans and on Aug. 27, 1776, Washington's troops were defeated in the battle of Long Island.

The whole force might have been captured and the war ended right then but for Washington's quick action. That night a heavy fog fell, and under its cover Washington ferried his army across the river to Manhattan Island.

The English followed Washington across the river and captured the City of New York. The Americans retreated northward and several times gave battle to the British.

224—Nathan Hale

Washington wanted to know the plans of the British, and to find them out Nathan Hale volunteered to go within their lines in disguise. He was a graduate of Yale, and a captain in the Regular Army, though but twenty years of age. When about to return from the dangerous undertaking, Hale was captured and condemned to be hanged as a spy. His letters to his family and friends were destroyed, and he was denied a clergyman. He died like a brave man, his



They were called Hessians. Finally Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, who greatly admired Washington, refused to allow the Hessians to cross his country.

seventy miles along the river. The army under Washington grew smaller each day. The cold was intense, and the suffering great but the purpose of the great commander never faltered.

CHAPTER XXXIII

GLOOM AND HOPE

226—Gloomy Outlook

When the end of the year of 1776 approached, but five thousand troops remained in the American camp. The

British were sure the whole army would soon melt away, and General Howe returned to New York. Lord Cornwallis got ready to take a vacation in England. The Hessians were left to hold Trenton and the line to New York.

Christmas night was a time of festivity for the Hessians in Trenton. A violent storm was raging, and the warmth and good cheer indoors claimed them.



© International Newsreel Co.

Hessians driven from their guns at Trenton

227—Battle of Trenton

This was the time Washington chose to strike. With twenty-four hundred men he crossed the ice-filled Delaware, nine miles above Trenton, and marched through the night in the face of the bitter storm. The Americans fell on the Hessian outposts and drove them in. The main body, hastily forming, tried to make a stand, but the American artillery was well served, and the Hessians were

utterly routed. Their commander, General Rall, was mortally wounded and a thousand prisoners were taken. Bancroft says, "Until that hour the life of the United States flickered like a dying flame. That victory turned the shadow of death into morning."

228—Cornwallis and Washington

On January 2nd, Lord Cornwallis, who had cancelled his trip to England after the battle of Trenton, advanced against Washington. Throughout the day his troops were harassed by the Americans at every point. He went into camp for that night, while re-inforcements were awaited. His sleepy sentries could see the campfires of the Americans burn-



ing brightly, and he eagerly awaited the morning to crush the "old fox," as he called Washington.

229—Battle of Princeton

But when the day came, Lord Cornwallis was greeted by the sound of the "old fox's" cannon, many miles away. Washington, leaving his camp-fires burning, had slipped away during the night and was now busy beating the English at Princeton, eighteen miles away. The English resisted stubbornly and in one place the Americans faltered. Riding to the front of his troops, within thirty yards of the enemy, Washington "reined in his horse with his head toward them." He escaped a full volley from

the British, and the Americans, thrilled by the bravery of their commander, quickly rallied and gained the victory.

230—Foreign Officers

The bravery of the Americans, and the justice of their cause, attracted officers of great worth from Europe. The Marquis de Lafayette, a brave French youth, fitted out a ship at his own expense, and sailed for the United States, in company with Baron de Kalb. Baron Steuben of Germany also arrived in America to aid the young nation.

and worked marvels in drilling the Americans and teaching them the proper use of arms and how to build fortifications. Pulaski and Kosciuszko, fresh from fighting for their beloved Poland, came to offer their swords to the young nation in America.



CHAPTER XXXIV

THE TURNING POINT OF THE WAR

231—Burgoyne

The British thought that if an army penetrated New York from Canada, and another invaded the Hudson Valley from New York City, the colonies would be cut in two. So

General Burgoyne, with a large force, set out from Canada by way of Lakes Champlain and George. It was expected that General Howe would move north with a force from New York. The American backwoodsmen and farmers gathered to stop Burgoyne. Many who would not regularly enlist were only too eager for this kind of service. They lay in ambush and shot the British down. They blockaded the roads by felling trees across them and wore out the English by constant attacks.

232—Bennington

Burgoyne's supplies began to grow short. Hearing that there were rich stores at Bennington, Vermont, he sent a



strong detachment to capture them. The Americans under General Stark surrounded and attacked the English. "We must beat the redcoats today, boys, or tonight Molly

Stark's a widow," cried the American leader. The British force, as well as re-inforcements sent to their aid, were completely routed and seven hundred taken prisoners.

233—Battle of Saratoga

Burgoyne pushed on until he reached Saratoga. The whole countryside had risen against him. The British tired out, and with little provisions left, were confronted by thousands of determined Americans. General Gates

France openly espoused the American cause. An alliance was formed towards the end of 1777. This was the first and only Treaty of Alliance ever made by the United States.

237—Valley Forge and Philadelphia

During the winter of 1778 Washington and his troops suffered great hardships in the encampment at Valley Forge, near Philadelphia. Without enough food or clothing the men suffered tortures. Some of them were indeed naked, and every night the cry of "No meat! No meat!" would go up from men in the starving army.

The British lived in luxury in Philadelphia. General Howe was succeeded in command by General Clinton. Balls and parties occupied the time, and many weak-hearted Americans promised allegiance to the King again.



MOLLY PITCHER AT MONMOUTH

Her husband shot, she took his place as a gunner

238—Philadelphia Evacuated

In the Spring the news of the French alliance changed the feeling. Clinton was ordered to evacuate Philadelphia and

return to New York. The frightened Tories begged him not to abandon them, and so great was their number that he did not have ships to take them all. So he decided to march his troops overland across the Jerseys.

239—Battle of Monmouth

Washington and his army fell on the British at Monmouth, June 28, 1778, and would have defeated them, but for the treachery of General Charles Lee, an Englishman, serving in the American army. As it was the British lost heavily and were glad to escape to New York.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION VI

1. Gen. Gage left Boston to seize some American stores at Concord. His troops met the Minute Men in battle at Lexington and at Concord. This first bloodshed aroused the whole country and united the colonies (Apr. 19, 1775).

2. The Americans surrounded Boston and fortified Bunker Hill. The English attacked and gained the hill, only after the ammunition of the patriots had given out.

3. A second Continental Congress met and raised an army of twenty thousand men. George Washington was made commander-in-chief.

4. An invasion of Canada by two American armies, under Montgomery and Arnold, resulted in the capture of Montreal, but defeat before Quebec.

5. Washington drove the British out of Boston. They retired to Halifax. A British attack on Fort Moultrie, guarding Charleston, South Carolina, was repulsed.

6. The feeling amongst the people was that matters had now gone too far for any compromise, and on July 4th, 1776,

Congress enacted the Declaration of Independence, declaring the colonies to be free and independent of England.

7. The British landed on Long Island, defeated Washington, and took New York. They drove the patriot army across New Jersey and over the Delaware River. At the end of 1776 the outlook for the new nation was one of gloom.

8. On the night of Christmas, 1776, Washington led his army across the Delaware, and attacked the Hessian garrison at Trenton. The surprise was complete and the victory of the Americans did much to raise their falling hopes.

9. The following year, 1777, the British planned to cut the colonies in two on the line of the Hudson River. Gen. Burgoyne, led an English army down from Canada, but was surrounded at Saratoga. Disappointed in securing help from New York City he was forced to surrender. This was the decisive battle of the war.

10. The news of this battle settled all doubts in the mind of the French Government (which had before this time secretly helped the Americans) and an alliance was formed between the countries. The aid from France thus gained was of importance in winning the war.

SECTION VII

END OF REVOLUTION. INDEPENDENCE

CHAPTER XXXV

THE WEST

240—The West

Before the war, England was not anxious to have the colonists settle across the Alleghany Mountains, and even passed laws to that effect. But Daniel Boone penetrated into Kentucky some time before the Revolution. A legend tells us that when Boone first beheld the splendid Kentucky country of hill and valley stretching before him, he exclaimed, "I am richer than the man in Scripture who owned cattle upon a thousand hills. I own the wild beasts in a thousand valleys." Colonies had also been planted in Tennessee under Robertson and the heroic Sevier*. These two settlements were the entering wedge driven into the Indian country. There was comparative peace in this region until the second year of the Revolution. Then the English Governor of Detroit, General Henry Hamilton, gathered together the Indians and sent them against the Americans. The "hair-buying general" was the name given to Hamilton, because he paid in cash for each American scalp brought in.

241—Clark

George Rogers Clark, a young backwoodsman, was commissioned by Patrick Henry, the Governor of Virginia, to

*John Sevier, though not a Catholic, is said to have descended from the same family as St. Francis Xavier; Sevier being the English corruption of Xavier.

invade the western country and take it for the colonies. With a little band of 150 men he sailed down the Ohio to the mouth of the Cumberland. From this point he struck out across country to the fort at Kaskaskia, where he surprised the garrison at a dance, and captured the fort without bloodshed.



George Rogers Clark surprises the garrison at Kaskaskia at a dance

242—Catholic Help

Many of the inhabitants were French and when told of the French-American alliance gladly swore allegiance to the colonies. Father Peter Gibault, Vicar General for the country, under the Bishop of Quebec, eagerly took sides with the Americans. The good priest aided Clark in every way, raised volunteers for him, and went himself to Vincennes and persuaded the people to favor the American

cause. The good man even spent all he owned in helping the cause of liberty and died a poor man. The help given by his people was of great assistance to Clark in gaining the country for the Americans.

243—Vincennes Captured

General Hamilton in Detroit, hearing of Clark's success, went with a force to destroy him. He recaptured Vincennes and planned to take Kaskaskia in the Spring. But



Clark's Expedition crossing the drowned lands

Clark did not wait for him. After a heroic march through a flooded country, whose lowlands were often neck deep in cold water, Clark fell on the fort at Vincennes. After a short siege Hamilton was forced to capitulate. (Feb. 23, 1779.)

244—Results

The effect of this was to gain the whole Northwest territory for the states. If it had not been for Clark's expedition, helped by Father Gibault's patriotism, the Ohio River would probably have been the northern boundary of the Union.

The great states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin would probably have been part of Canada.

CHAPTER XXXVI

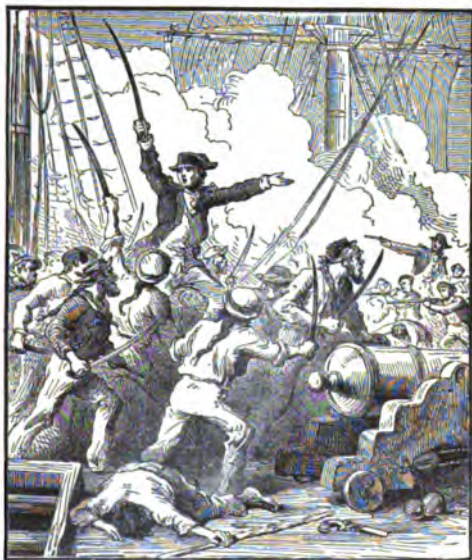
NAVAL OPERATIONS—ARNOLD'S TREASON

245—Privateers

The American Colonies had no war ships when the Revolution started. However, scores of fast private ships were fitted out with guns. They received commissions from Congress which made them "privateers," and hundreds of British vessels were captured by them.

246—John Barry

The first British warship captured in the war was the "Edward." She was taken by the American frigate



Barry leads his men aboard the enemy

"Lexington" commanded by Captain John Barry. This same officer fought the last naval battle of the war, against the British ship "Sybille." In the interval "Saucy Jack Barry, half Irishman, half Yankee" distinguished himself by his naval exploits. When the present American navy was founded by Washington, in 1794, Barry's name was placed at the head of the list of officers with the rank of Commander.

So, whether we refer to the Navy of the Revolutionary War, or to the foundation of the present Navy, this brave Irish American Catholic is truly called "the Father of the American Navy."

247—John Paul Jones

Among the officers of the navy during the Revolution, who served with Barry, was Captain John Paul Jones. In 1779, with French aid, he fitted out a small fleet and ravaged the coast of England. He fell in with the British ships "Serapis" and "Countess of Scarborough" and captured the first named after a desperate struggle. Both ships were



Paul Jones

shot to pieces and sank shortly afterwards. The commander of the "Serapis" was made a knight by the King for his gallant conduct. "If I fall in with him again I'll make a lord of him," said Jones.

These naval victories were a great help to the young nation. They proved to Europe the fighting qualities of the Americans.

248—Benedict Arnold's Treason

The year of 1780 was a dark one for the American patriots. Benedict Arnold, Major General in command of the forts at West Point, became a traitor to the American cause. Arnold had been a very brave officer and at Saratoga his

courage amounted almost to rashness. But his services had not been properly rewarded by Congress.

Arnold, moreover, was in financial difficulties. Disheartened by his treatment, and in great need of money, he offered the British General Clinton an opportunity of capturing West Point. For this terrible act of treason Arnold was to receive large pay and high rank in the British army.



Siege of Charleston

and

249—Major André

Major John André, an English officer of high repute, was sent

in a warship to confer with Arnold. He was led within the American lines, and, unable to return to the ship, was obliged to make his way to New York by land. He reached Tarrytown, and felt safe from the Americans, when three men stepped out from a roadside thicket and levelled their guns at him. A search of his clothes was made and the agreement with Arnold found in his boots. His captors though poor men refused large offers of money to release him. Their splendid patriotism saved West Point for the Americans. André was hanged as a spy, but Arnold escaped to the British to receive his gold and high rank in their army.

250—A Traitor's Miserable End

Arnold afterwards led British attacks on Virginia and against his native Connecticut. He died in England years

half of his force with him to New York, Clinton left General Cornwallis to complete the conquest.



Siege of Charleston

253—Gates in Command

General Gates, who commanded at Saratoga, was now placed in charge of the American army in the South. Many of his friends had long been trying to have him made Commander-in-Chief in place of Washington. It is well they did not succeed. With an army of three thousand Americans, Gates gave battle to Cornwallis and two thousand British, at Camden, and was shamefully defeated (Aug. 16, 1780). The brave De Kalb was killed there.

254—Battle of King's Mountain

The British now left most of the fighting to the Tories, who understood the country and the backwoods style of fighting. Under Tarleton and Ferguson they swept the whole countryside well up to the mountains. But they had not counted on the mountaineers of the west. These hardy patriots commenced to assemble by hundreds. They were

all hunters, whose every shot reached the mark. At Kings Mountain one thousand of them attacked a British force of twelve hundred, killed the commander Ferguson, and captured all left living. This greatly crippled Cornwallis.



Ferguson's last stand at King's Mountain

255—General Greene in Command

General Gates was relieved (1781), and General Greene, the finest officer in the war next to Washington, was placed in command. Then the outlook changed. Greene did not risk defeat by opposing Cornwallis with a single force. He sent one detachment under Francis Marion, the "Swamp Fox," to get between Cornwallis and the coast.

256—Battle of Cowpens

Another detachment was placed under Morgan, the frontiersman. Cornwallis sent Tarleton with eleven hundred

men to hunt down Morgan and his followers. Morgan met him at the Battle of Cowpens (Jan. 17, 1781), and only two hundred and seventy British managed to escape by flight. Cornwallis now started in pursuit of Greene who retired gradually, leading the British away from their supplies at Charleston and finally escaping into Virginia.



Frontier riflemen

257—Guilford Court House

A short time later the subtle Greene recrossed into North Carolina and gave battle to Cornwallis, at Guilford Court House. It was a British victory, but so costly a one that Cornwallis lost one quarter of his men. He then made up his mind to reach the coast and get aid from the fleet. Cornwallis heard that the traitor Arnold was in Virginia with some British troops, and so determined to go North and meet him, instead of returning south to Charleston and risking another fight with Greene.

258—Cornwallis Trapped

Cornwallis reached Virginia safely and moved about freely for a time. Steuben was there to oppose him, however, and soon Lafayette arrived with twelve hundred of Washington's troops. By the middle of the summer Cornwallis thought it prudent to withdraw to the coast. He moved down to Yorktown on the peninsula, which is between the York and James Rivers. Here he was trapped.

259—Yorktown

A French fleet with a large force of troops was in the West Indies, and Washington begged the Admiral De Grasse to sail for Yorktown. This he promised to do. Washington and Rochambeau straightway set out from New York. Four thousand Frenchmen and two thousand Americans hurried through the long march of four hundred miles to Virginia. They arrived in time to cut off Cornwallis by land. The



Capture of an English redoubt at Yorktown

French fleet arrived in the bay and cut off all hope of aid by water from the British in New York. The combined French-American forces besieged the British.

260—Cornwallis Surrenders

A joint attack carried important earthworks and, on Oct. 19, 1781, General Cornwallis and all his troops surrendered.

The British army marched out between the long lines of Americans, under Washington, and the French, under

Rochambeau, laid down their arms, and the last battle of the Revolution had been fought. Lord Cornwallis sent his sword by General O'Hara. _ Washington appointed General Lincoln to receive it.

261—Peace at Last

By the Americans the news of the defeat of Cornwallis was hailed with joy and gratitude. But in England all was gloom.

part you took in the accomplishment of their Revolution and the establishment of their Government, or the important assistance they received from a nation in which the Roman Catholic faith is professed."



Charles Carroll of Carrollton

266—Articles of Confederation

At the time of the Declaration of Independence it was ~~known~~ that the country realized that all was over, that a nation was lost to them. King George III was obliged to dismiss his favorite minister, Lord North, through whom he had carried on the war in America. Other ministers more favorably inclined towards the colonies came into power, and, on Sept. 3, 1783, a treaty of peace was signed between the two nations.

262—Results

By this treaty England acknowledged the independence of the United States. The young nation occupied all the territory from Canada to Florida, and from the Atlantic to the Mississippi River. England had in the meantime ceded Florida to Spain.

CHAPTER XXXVIII

259—Yorktown

A French fleet with a large force of troops was in the West Indies, and Washington begged the Admiral De Grasse to sail for Yorktown. This he promised to do. Washington and Rochambeau straightway set out from New York. Four thousand Frenchmen and two thousand Americans hurried through the long march of four hundred miles to Virginia. They arrived in time to cut off Cornwallis by land. The



The French fleet arrived in the bay and cut off all hope of aid by water from the British in New York. The combined French-American forces besieged the British at Yorktown. *Kosciusko, Pulaski, De Kalb, etc.* were Catholics who distinguished themselves bearing arms for the young republic. "Congress' Own" one of the finest and bravest of the Continental regiments was composed of Catholics.

At the close of the war General Washington and the members of Congress attended a public "Te Deum", in a Catholic church in Philadelphia.

265—Washington's Reply to the Catholics' Address

The Catholics later presented the new President with an Address of Congratulation. In his reply to the Roman Catholics of the United States, Washington remarked, "I presume your fellow citizens will not forget the patriotic part you took in the accomplishment of their Revolution and the establishment of their Government, or the important assistance they received from a nation in which the Roman Catholic faith is professed."



Charles Carroll of Carrollton

266—Articles of Confederation

At the time of the Declaration of Independence it was proposed that the states should be joined together under Articles of Confederation. The more urgent matter of winning the war engaged the attention of the colonies, and these Articles were not adopted for some years. They were finally adopted by the last state, Maryland, in 1781, the year Cornwallis was defeated. The new nation was governed by them until Washington became President in 1789.

267—The Northwest Territory

Many of the seaboard states had some sort of claim to the territory across the mountains and between the Ohio and the Great Lakes. The charters of the Colonies were very indefinite as to their boundaries and many of their claims conflicted. Maryland would not ratify the "Articles of Confederation" unless all the states agreed to turn over their ~~claims to the Confederation~~ itself. This the other states agreed to do, and so, in 1789, this region was organized into the Northwest Territory.

268—Ordinance of 1787

The laws providing for the formation of this territory were embodied in an Ordinance. By it were guaranteed freedom of worship and trial by jury; slavery was prohibited and education encouraged. To-day this section is the heart of the Union embracing the great states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin. In those days it was almost a wilderness, but one that was rapidly giving way before hardy pioneers from the East.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION VII

1. The great territory between the Ohio River and the Great Lakes, was captured for the Americans by an expedition led by George Rogers Clark.
2. Father Peter Gibault and the ~~French~~ Catholic residents in this district gave valuable aid to the Americans.
3. As a result of these operations the valuable territory which now comprises the rich states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin, came under the American flag.
4. The two most famous American naval commanders in the war of the Revolution were Capt. John Barry, the "Fa-

ther of the American Navy," an Irish-American Catholic; and Capt. John Paul Jones, a splendid fighter, who first raised the Stars and Stripes over a man-of-war.

5. Benedict Arnold, an American general noted for his bravery, was unfairly treated by Congress and turned traitor to the patriot cause. He was rewarded by money and rank in the British army. He died a miserable outcast.

6. The British, in 1778, carried the war to the Southern states. They soon overran the whole country. General Greene was placed in command of the American forces (1781) and matters soon changed.

7. Gen. Cornwallis, commanding the British, followed Greene north as far as Virginia without being able to destroy him. Cornwallis then retired to Yorktown. There he was finally cut off by the Americans, under Washington, and the French, under Rochambeau. De Grasse, with a French fleet, cut off help by sea. Cornwallis surrendered and the War of the Revolution soon ended.

8. As a result of this war the United States became recognized as an independent nation, occupying all the territory from Canada to Florida, and from the Atlantic Ocean to the Mississippi River.

9. Catholic Americans played a prominent part in the Revolution, both in Congress and in the Army and Navy. Catholic France, with her troops and ships, gave the help necessary to win the war.

10. The various states had claims to the territory across the Alleghanies. These claims were finally turned over to the central government, and the Northwest Territory, owned by all the states in common, was organized. Thus the states were brought closer together in the united ownership of this territory.

SECTION VIII

THE CONSTITUTION. SELF-GOVERNMENT

CHAPTER XXXIX THE CONSTITUTION

269—Weak Central Government

The states, while united in a way by Articles of Confederation, considered themselves independent of one another. Congress had no real control over them. It could not tax them or raise any money, except what they chose to give. The cession of the Northwest Territory was the first step toward a real central government. By it was established a Territory which all the states owned in common. This ownership bound them together. They could not again separate it; nor could they themselves separate from one another if they wished to retain their interest in the Territory.

270—Need of Strong Central Government

The feeling that some permanent form of government should be established gradually increased. Some sort of union was needed. A central government with a responsible head must be founded. As they then existed, the states were each a separate unit. They taxed goods sent from one to another, and each had its own kind of money. Congress could talk and make laws, but it could not make the states obey them. As Washington said: "We have one nation to-day and thirteen to-morrow."

271—Constitutional Convention

So in May, 1787, a convention met in Philadelphia. The best men in the land were sent to this assembly, and Washington was chosen to preside. It was soon found that the old Articles of Confederation could not be so amended as to be satisfactory and a Constitution was proposed.

There was great jealousy among the states. The smaller feared the larger. It was difficult to agree on a way to grant representation to the various states. But great minds were at work, though some of the men best known in the Revolution were absent. There, and Thomas Jefferson was in France. Patrick Henry would not attend.

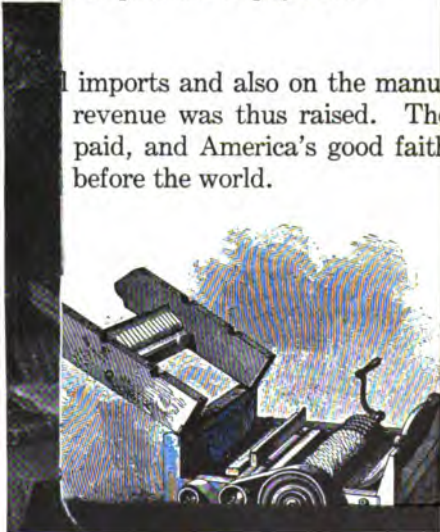
272—Makers of the Constitution

James Madison and John Blair of Virginia, Alexander Hamilton of New York, Benjamin Franklin, now eighty-two years old, of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman from Connecticut, and Gouverneur Morris and

Rufus King of New York; these and many other famous men were among the fifty-five commissioners who attended.

the credit of the country and pre-
at to promise to pay it all.

l imports and also on the manu-
revenue was thus raised. The
paid, and America's good faith
before the world.



Benjamin Franklin

273—Washington and the Constitution

"Let us raise a standard to which the wise and honest can repair. The event is in the hand of God" were the words of Washington during the first days of the assembly.

Washington served his country in three great positions. He was commander-in-chief of the army; President of this Constitutional Convention; and first President of the United States. Many thoughtful men believe that the greatest service he rendered his country was in helping, as President of the Constitutional Convention, to reconcile the differences

The states, while united in a w
tion, considered themselves inc **Ratified**
Congress had no real control ov
them or raise any money, excep
The cession of the Northwest T
oward a real central governme
Territory which all the states
ownership bound them togethe
separate it; nor could they the
another if they wished to retain
tory.

stitution was adopted Sept.
the states for ratification.
until nine states had ac-
788, New Hampshire, the
Constitution became the
at states of New York and
but seeing they must do so
ey too joined in.

270—Need of Strong Central G

The feeling that some perma
should be established gradually
union was needed. A central g
ble head must be founded. A
every four years, whose duty is
the laws.

n the States bound them-
ublic. The Government of
parts.
h. A President is elected
to see to the enforcement of

Second: The Legislative branch. A Congress is elected, consisting of the Senate, to which each state sends two members; and the House of Representatives, to which they send members according to their population. It is the duty

of Congress to make laws for the Union; to coin money for the whole country; and to raise money by taxation.

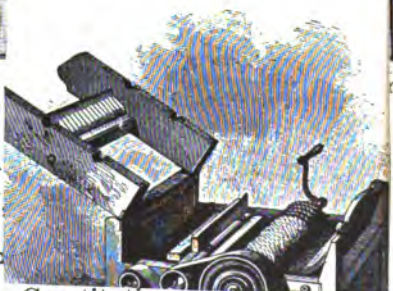
Third: The Judicial branch. A Supreme Court is appointed by the President, with the consent of the Senate. It is the duty of the Supreme Court to explain the laws and determine whether or not they conflict with the Constitution.



Arch erected by the women

the credit of the country and pre-
at to promise to pay it all.

l imports and also on the manu-
revenue was thus raised. The
paid, and America's good faith
before the world.



CHA

WASHINGTON

276—Washington, First P

To elect a President the Constitution provided that the various states should each choose a certain number of electors, who would choose a President by ballot. The electors sent their sealed votes to Congress. On the 6th of April the envelopes containing the names of their choice were opened. The first name on every ballot was that of George Washing-

ton. He was unanimously elected first President of the United States.*

On the 30th of April, 1789, Washington was inaugurated on the balcony of Federal Hall in Wall Street, New York, on the spot where a heroic bronze statue of the General now stands.

277—First Bishop

The same year that Washington became President, the Catholics of the United States received their first Bishop. Father John Carroll, of Maryland, whose patriotism and

The states, while united in a w
tion, considered themselves inc
Congress had no real control ove
them or raise any money, excep
The cession of the Northwest T
oward a real central governme
Territory which all the states
ownership bound them togethe
eparate it; nor could they the
another if they wished to retain
ory.

270—Need of Strong Central G

The feeling that some perma
should be established gradually
union was needed. A central go
ble head must be founded. A

piety were admired by
all, received this honor.
His diocese included the
whole United States of
that day.

278—Washington's Ad- ministration

Washington hoped
that the country could
be ruled without having
political parties. So
when he formed a Cab-
inet, he appointed
Thomas Jefferson, Sec-
retary of State, and
Alexander Hamilton,
Secretary of Treasury.

* Washington at once set out from his home in Mount Vernon, Virginia, to the Capital which was then New York. His journey was one long ovation. The whole country rose to do him honor. When he reached the city of Trenton which he had rescued from the Hessians on Christmas Night, in 1776, he was met by the ladies of the city. An arch of triumph had been erected which bore the inscription: "The Defender of Mothers will be the Protector of Daughters."

Hamilton was the head of that faction called the Federalists. They believed in giving great power to the Central Government. Jefferson was an Anti-Federalist, or a believer in giving but little power to the central government and more to the individual states.

279—Finances

The country was in great need of money. All told, there was a debt of \$80,000,000 owed both by the nation and the states. Many were in favor of repudiating, or refusing to pay, at least that part owed by the states. But Hamilton felt that this would ruin the credit of the country and prevailed upon the government to promise to pay it all.

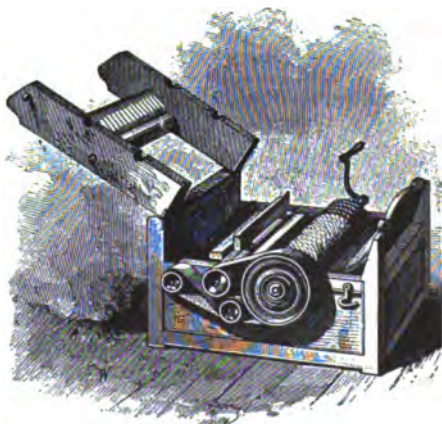
280—First Tariff

Taxes were placed on all imports and also on the manufacture of whiskey, and a revenue was thus raised. The debts of the country were paid, and America's good faith and credit were established before the world.

In 1792 Washington was re-elected President and John Adams Vice President.

281—Cotton Gin

The cotton plant grew easily in the South, and the value of cotton was well known, but to separate the cotton from the seeds was difficult and tedious. A worker could pick



The cotton gin

only a few pounds a day. In 1792, Eli Whitney, a New England Yankee, invented a machine for picking cotton. At once the raising of this staple became profitable, and immense tracts in the South were given over to it. Thousands of slaves were brought in from Africa to do the planting and a large trade grew up between the North and South. England also became a great purchaser of this material. Thus the invention of Whitney, by making slave ownership profitable, came in a great measure to be the cause of the great Civil War of many years later.

282—Indian Wars

The Northwest Territory was rapidly being settled, but there was little security for the hardy pioneers. Indian raids were frequent and bloody. Two American armies were sent against them, and both were badly defeated. The Indians grew still bolder, and the government became greatly alarmed. "Mad Anthony" Wayne was finally chosen to lead a third army. "Little Turtle," the Indian Chief, advised the Indians to ask for peace. He did not care to fight "a leader who never slept." But the Indians wanted fight, and so a battle was fought (Aug. 20, 1794) on the Maumee. The Indians were routed and their lands laid waste. General Wayne forced them into a treaty of peace which really opened up the Northwest Territory to settlement.

283—New States

North Carolina and Rhode Island, which had long refused to ratify the Constitution, now entered the sisterhood of States, in 1789 and 1790, and the original thirteen were again complete. In 1791, Vermont, the first new State, was admitted; it was carved out of territory claimed by both New York and New Hampshire. The people declared that if

Vermont could not be a separate state they would join Canada. In 1792, Kentucky, and in 1795, Tennessee, were admitted. They were the first new States across the Alleghany mountains.

284—Washington's Retirement

Washington refused to serve a third term as President. During his second term, in the heat of politics, he had many times been attacked and abused, but, as his administration drew to a close, the people wanted him again. He wrote his celebrated farewell address and returned to his estate in Mount Vernon.

285—Washington's Farewell Address

Americans have so much respect for this address of Washington's that they have made parts of it almost the unwritten law of our land. In it he warned his countrymen against any attempts to disunite any portion of the country from the rest. He warned them to beware of entangling alliances with foreign nations.

CHAPTER XLI

JOHN ADAMS, SECOND PRESIDENT

286—John Adams (1797-1801)

A Revolution had broken out in France, and England had declared war on that country. Many people thought that America should take sides with her ancient ally, France. Others thought that we should remain neutral. John Adams of Massachusetts was the leader of the latter, or Federalist, party. Thomas Jefferson headed the other faction which was called the Republican. This is the same party that is now known as the Democratic Party. Adams received the most votes and became President. Jefferson

became Vice President. Adams was inaugurated in Philadelphia, whither the government had been moved.

287—X. Y. Z. Papers

Adams sent three envoys to France to endeavor to smooth over difficulties which had arisen between the countries. They were outrageously received in that country and refused even a hearing unless they should first pay tribute to the agents of the Revolutionists.



John Adams

Charles Pinckney one of the envoys answered this demand with his famous reply, "We have millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute." When reporting these happenings to Congress, President Adams called the agents who had demanded money Mr. X. Mr. Y. and Mr. Z. Thus his message became known as the X. Y. Z. Papers.

288—War With France

Meanwhile a naval war had broken out between the United States and French Revolutionists. Privateers attacked and captured our ships. A fleet of American vessels was fitted out and won several important engagements. An army was also raised and Washington was once more made commander-in-chief. Happily, in the year 1800, Napoleon Bonaparte gained control of French Affairs, and peace was restored before a formal war had been declared.

289—Alien and Sedition Laws

During the excitement with France, Adams had secured

the passage of laws which gave him the power to send out of the United States any foreigners whose conduct he considered dangerous to this country. This was called the Alien Law. The Sedition Law gave the right to fine or imprison any one defaming the President or the Government. These laws were considered against the spirit of freedom and were bitterly attacked. In fact two of the states, Kentucky and Virginia, passed resolutions refusing to be bound by them. This is the first instance of the "states' rights" being advanced. By this is meant the right of an individual state to reject the laws of the central government.

290—Death of Washington

During the closing days of 1799 the whole country was thrown into mourning by the death of Washington. The hardships of the Revolution, and the difficulties of two terms as President of a new nation, had greatly reduced his rugged strength; at the end a slight cold developed fatally. His remains were interred in a vault on his estate, at Mount Vernon, on the Potomac. So passed away George Washington, the Father of his Country.—"first in peace, first in war, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."



The tomb of Washington at Mount Vernon

CHAPTER XLII

THOMAS JEFFERSON, THIRD PRESIDENT

'in a duel
son, but
ed.

291—Jefferson's Administration (1801-1809)

The election of 1800 resulted in a tie between Thon^{Clark} Jefferson, of Virginia, and Aaron Burr, of New York. ^{Tuisiana} law provided that in such an event the House of Rep^{ut} sentatives should el^{pedition} the President. Jeff^{explore} son became the cho^{in 1804.} of the House of Rep^{tion of} sentatives. ^{It is}



Thomas Jefferson

'The capital of ^{the} their country was ne^{map.} changed from Ph^{the then} delphia to the new Ct. Louis, of Washington, on the Mis- banks of the Potom^{its head}. It was felt thatⁿ pushed would not be pre^{at} Rocky for the national go^{we can im-} ment to continu^{as that,} any State, wher^{spite of all} local government^{umbia River} conflict with it. ^{les from their}

tract of land was given by the states of Maryland a^{and} ginia, and in this "District of Columbia" the new city was founded. The portion given by Virginia['] used and was later ceded back to that state.

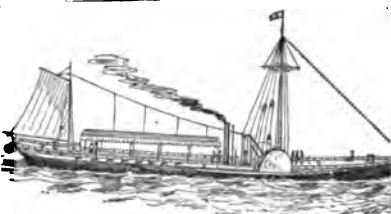
^{and some years}
^{ee sailing master,}
^{ship.} The region

292—Louisiana Territory

Hardly had Jefferson taken office, when the new^{Louisiana Purchase,} that Spain had ceded the vast Louisiana territory ^{time,} but Captain The Mississippi River divided this vast tract of ^{r the} United States.

Now Lewis and Clark reaffirmed that claim by their exploration.

and ungainly paddle wheels, put out from New York amid the jeers and laughter of the crowd. But the derision of the people did not last, for the "Clermont" moved steadily up the stream, under her own power, against wind and current, and arrived in Albany the following day.



Fulton's "Clermont"

302—Results

This first steamboat was rapidly followed by others. The invention quickly opened up the magnificent waterways of the country to profitable trade and immigration, and brought all parts closer together through speed in communication.

297—American Ships Captured

France and England were still at war, and the shipping of almost the whole world came to be carried in American ships. But England decided not to allow these neutral ships to carry supplies to France and her European allies. She commenced to confiscate American ships and merchandise and impress American seamen into her navy. England would not admit that Englishmen who had become American citizens were no longer under her control. "Once an Englishman, always an Englishman" she said. France retaliated for the capture of vessels bound for her ports, by capturing American vessels bound for English ports.

298—Jefferson Averse to War

President Jefferson was averse to war, and so persuaded Congress that the best way to stop the aggression of England

The election of 1800 resulted in a tie between Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, and Aaron Burr, of New York. Louisiana law provided that in such an event the House of



representatives should elect the President. Jefferson became the first President of the United States in 1801. He was a member of the House of Representatives from 1799 to 1801. It is

The capital of the country was moved from Philadelphia to the city of Washington, D.C. in 1800. The map of the country was changed from the Atlantic coast to the Pacific coast. The city of Philadelphia was then the capital of the United States. The city of Washington was then the capital of the United States. It was felt that the capital should be pushed westward to the Rocky Mountains.

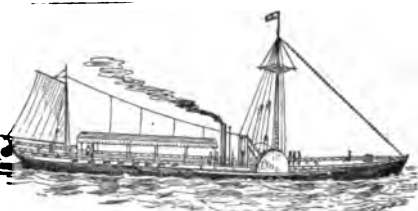
300—The Steamboat

While the foreign relations of the United States were thus in a bad way, her domestic affairs were prospering. The vast western areas were filling up, the forest was being reduced and towns and villages were being established. And now came an invention which had much to do with the future prosperity of the country. Shortly after the close of the Revolution John Fitch had run a ferry-boat, propelled by steam, across the Delaware River, at Philadelphia.

301—Robert Fulton

Others had constructed steam boats that would go in a way; but it remained for Robert Fulton to invent a practical

and successful steamboat. On the second of September, 1807, the "Clermont," a curious looking boat with a very high smokestack and ungainly paddle wheels, put out from New York amid the jeers and laughter of the crowd. But the derision of the people did not last, for the "Clermont" moved steadily up the stream, under her own power, against wind and current, and arrived in Albany the following day.



Fulton's "Clermont"

302—Results

This first steamboat was rapidly followed by others. The invention quickly opened up the magnificent waterways of the country to profitable trade and immigration, and brought all parts closer together through speed in communication.

303—Catholicity

Catholicity had a large increase during these years, many Irish being driven from their native land after the Rebellion of 1798. In 1808, Bishop Carroll of Baltimore was made an Archbishop, and Bishoprics were erected in New York, Philadelphia, Boston, and Bardstown in Kentucky.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION VIII

1. The thirteen states were thirteen independent nations, bound together by loose articles of Confederation. A Convention was called, which, after many difficulties, agreed on a Constitution (1787). Under it the states became a united nation.

2. Under the Constitution the government is divided into three parts: The Executive branch, with a President to execute the laws; the Legislative branch, with a Congress to make the laws; and the Judicial branch, with a Supreme Court to explain the laws.

3. George Washington was unanimously elected first President of the United States. The payment of the debts of the nation and of the states was undertaken, and taxes were placed on imports and manufactures, to raise funds.

4. In 1792 the Cotton Gin was invented by Eli Whitney. This machine made cotton picking easy and thus made slavery profitable. So, in a way, the invention was responsible for the great Civil War seventy years later.

5. John Adams was elected second President. He was the leader of the Federalists, who believed in giving much power to the central government. Thomas Jefferson became Vice-President. He was a Republican (now Democrat) who believed the States should wield the power.

6. A revolution in France overthrew the monarchy and the revolutionists demanded money from our envoys. Ill-feeling following resulted in several naval battles. Before formal war was declared against France, Napoleon Bonaparte came into power, and the dispute was settled.

7. During the term of Thomas Jefferson, third President, the Louisiana Territory was bought from France. This gave the United States control of the mouth of the Mississippi and extended its boundary to the Rocky Mountains.

8. This great territory was explored by Lewis and Clark (1804). They pushed up to the headwaters of the Missouri, and crossing the Rockies, explored and claimed the Oregon country for the United States.

9. England and France, at war with one another, captured American ships bound for each other's ports. Jefferson, being averse to war, sought to avoid trouble by the Embargo Act, which forbade all American shipping. This injured trade and was repealed. A Non-Intercourse Act followed; prohibiting trade with England and France.

10. Robert Fulton, an American, built the first practical steamboat in 1809. This invention quickly opened up the splendid waterways of the country to commerce and travel.

BIOGRAPHIES

BIOGRAPHIES

George Washington

GEORGE WASHINGTON, the first president of the United States, was born at Pope's Creek, Virginia, on February 22, 1732. When he was only eleven years old his father died, leaving five children, of whom George was the oldest. He was always an affectionate and obedient son. Influential friends procured him a midshipman's position in the British navy. Though desirous of taking so good an offer, he gave it up at his mother's request. God had reserved him for higher honors than he could win as a British naval officer. In school George was studious and respectful to his teachers. For his own guidance he wrote out a set of rules to govern his conduct. The last one was—

“Labor to keep alive in your breast that little spark of celestial fire, CONSCIENCE.”

He became a surveyor, and later on a soldier, in the service of Virginia. As a delegate to the first and second Continental Congress he took a bold stand against British tyranny in America. When the Revolutionary War began, Congress appointed him commander-in-chief of the American armies, which were then composed of raw recruits, men that knew nothing of war. Though always hampered by lack of sufficient soldiers, money, and equipments, Washington conducted the long war to a successful issue. He was President of the Constitutional Convention which met in Philadelphia in 1787. For two terms President of the nation which he had done so much to build up, he showed his high character in refusing to be, for a third time, a candidate for the Presi-

dency. He feared that to be so long chief ruler of the United States might raise a suspicion that he wanted to be king. He died at Mt. Vernon, his home, on Dec. 14, 1799. A resolution adopted by Congress lamenting his death, declared truly that "Washington was first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."

Jefferson

THOMAS JEFFERSON, the author of the Declaration of Independence and one of the most eminent of American statesmen, was born at Shadwell, Virginia, April 2, 1743. At the age of 24 he was admitted to practice law in the Virginia courts. He was chairman of the committee appointed by the second Continental Congress to frame a declaration proclaiming the American colonies independent of Great Britain. He was then only 33 years old. To him we owe our very convenient decimal money system. It was his persistent and intelligent advocacy of a decimal system of coinage that induced Congress to substitute it for the clumsy English pounds, shillings and pence. Elected President, in 1801, he was re-elected in 1804. His greatest presidential achievement was the purchase, in 1803, of the Louisiana territory from Napoleon Bonaparte, then ruler of France. Jefferson disliked the pomp and pageantry which usually accompany monarchy, and he scorned titles and decorations. He was always proud however, of the fact that he framed the Virginia statute which guarantees religious freedom to every one. He died near Charlottesville, Virginia, on July 4, 1825.

Carroll

CHARLES CARROLL, of Carrolltown, Maryland, was born at Annapolis in that state, in 1737, a member of a very wealthy Catholic family. Educated at Jesuit colleges in

France, and having spent some time in law studies in London, he was well qualified to take a leading part in the political questions which finally were solved by the War of the Revolution. A delegate to the famous Continental Congress of 1776 he signed the Declaration of Independence, though he thereby risked the largest fortune in the colonies at the time. He died at the ripe age of 95 years, the last surviving signer of the Great Declaration.

Lafayette

THE MARQUIS DE LAFAYETTE a distinguished French Catholic nobleman, is universally regarded as one of the finest characters in all history. Having heard the Declaration of Independence read at a banquet of the aristocracy in France, he at once decided to lend his aid to the American struggle for liberty. At his own expense he equipped a vessel, induced several prominent army officers to go with him, and sailed for America. Here Congress made him a Major General and assigned him to Washington's staff. Lafayette was then only twenty years old. He fought gallantly in several battles. In 1779, he went back to France to induce that country to help America. He succeeded, for, in 1780, the French government sent Count de Rochambeau with 6,000 well armed soldiers, and a little later a fleet commanded by Count de Grasse. Lafayette also came back to the United States and in battle showed much military ability. Returning to France, he was given a high commission in the King's army but was captured and imprisoned in Germany and Austria. Released in 1797, he took no part in the Napoleonic wars which raged till 1815. In 1826, Congress invited him to visit the United States. His journey in this country roused unbounded enthusiasm. Congress gave him a grant of 24,000 acres of public land. He died a member of the French Chamber of Deputies in Paris, 1834.

Franklin

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN is often called the "wisest of Americans." He was the fifteenth child of a family of seventeen children and was born in Boston, January 17, 1706. After learning the printer's trade, he left Boston at the age of 17 and settled in Philadelphia. His talents, industry, integrity and sound judgment brought him the highest honors in the political and social life of his day. His work in science was also remarkable. By means of a kite, with a common iron key attached to the string, he proved in a thunderstorm, that lightning and electricity are identical. As publisher of the best newspaper of his time, the *Pennsylvania Gazette*, and of the famous "*Poor Richard's Almanac*", he wielded great influence. He was one of the committee that drew up the immortal Declaration of Independence, was a very influential member of the Congress which framed our national Constitution, and rendered the United States most efficient aid as our minister at the French Court. It was when making a request that prayer be daily said in the Constitutional Convention that he uttered the memorable remark: "The longer I live, the more convincing proofs I see of this truth—that God governs in the affairs of men." Franklin died in Philadelphia, on April 17, 1790.

Barry

JOHN BARRY, a famous American naval officer, was born in Wexford County, Ireland, in 1745. He came to America while a boy, and engaged in sea trading. He became wealthy, but at the outbreak of the Revolutionary War promptly ranged himself on the patriot side, though he thereby imperiled his life and fortune. Made a commander in the American navy, he captured several British war vessels; and, when the navy was reorganized after the war, he was placed at its head.

[illegible]

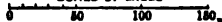
100 200 300 400

A map of the vicinity of Matamoros, Texas. The Rio Grande is shown flowing from the top left towards the bottom right, separating the United States (labeled 'U.S.') from Mexico (labeled 'MEXICO'). On the U.S. side, locations marked include Ft. Brown, Matamoros, Ft. Isaacs, Palo Alto, and Rancho de la Palma. On the Mexican side, locations marked include Brown de Santiago and a distance of 100 miles. The map is titled 'VICINITY OF MATAMOROS'.

[illegible]

MAP TO ILLUSTRATE
THE WAR OF 1812-1814

SCALE OF MILES



any

British sloop
round shot in
in the "Pres-
ship. Con-
in our trade,
lers could no
June 19, 1812.

point aimed
Governor of
ada. Hear-
retreated
and In-
mericans
When
hoist-
d his
sen-

d
h
t
1
1
1

ca
his

ephew, Captain Isaac Hull in command of the U. S. S. "Constitution" (which the people loved to call "Old Ironsides") fell in with the British ship "Guerriere," off the New England coast. Captain Hull paid no attention to the fire of the Britisher, until he had brought his ship to the exact position wanted, less than a pistol shot away. Then he poured in some smashing broadsides and the English ship surrendered, in a sinking condition.



The "Constitution" and the "Guerriere"

1799—"Frolic" and
"Wasp"

A few months later the American sloop of war "Wasp" defeated the English brig "Frolic," off Carolina and captured her. Decatur, commanding the "United States," captured the "Macedonian" and to end up the year well, "Old Ironsides" took the British "Java."

Naval triumphs continued. Privateers were fitted out and in this year captured over three hundred prizes. The whole country rejoiced at these naval victories and was proud of the valor of the Yankee seamen.

In the first year of the war, while these naval victories were being gained by the Americans, President Madison was re-elected for a second term.



Battle between the "United States" and the "Macedonian"

312—Bat

Genera
in comm
Meigs, i
cleared I
Indians
were dev
Thames,
and all
regained

310—Battle of Lake Erie

The British had been most successful along the Canadian border because their fleet controlled Lake Erie. Commodore Oliver Hazard Perry, then but twenty-seven years of age, was sent to build a fleet and drive the English from the Lake. Perry built and equipped a fleet of nine vessels and set out to meet the English at Put-in-Bay. Perry's flagship the "Lawrence," led the attack against the enemy's flagship, "Detroit." It was a furious fight. The "Lawrence" was badly shot up and the "Detroit" was a wreck. Perry calmly embarked in a small boat and was rowed through a shower of shot to the "Niagara." Once again he sailed close to the enemy and in a short time had them at his mercy. When the battle was over, he sent General Harrison his famous message "We have met the enemy and they are ours; two ships, two brigs, one schooner and a sloop." General Harrison, as we shall see, soon acted on this good news.

CHAPTER XLIV

THE WAR OF 1812 (Continued)

312—Battle of the Thames

General Harrison, who afterward became President, was in command of the American "Army of the West" at Fort Meigs, in Michigan. As soon as he heard that Perry had cleared Lake Erie of British ships, he went in pursuit of the Indians under Tecumseh and the English under Proctor, who were devastating the countryside. They met at the River Thames, and the American victory was complete. So Detroit and all the territory Hull had surrendered, and more, were regained for the Americans as a result of Perry's victory.



313—War with Indians in South

During 1811, the chief Tecumseh had started trouble among the Alabama Indians. In 1813, they fell on the Americans and massacred the garrison at Fort Mimms, including women and children. General Andrew Jackson was sent against them. He was a tremendous fighter, and drove the savages from one place to another until he had them cornered at Horseshoe Bend. Here his troops attacked with the bayonet and almost exterminated the tribe.

314—Veteran Troops Engaged

In 1814, the British troops, which had been fighting Napoleon, were free to be sent to America. But in the two



(From an old print)
The land and water battle of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain

years of fighting the Americans had also learned a few things about war.

Still another invasion of Canada was planned, and an army under General Scott crossed the border and captured Lundy's Lane. This was a fierce fight and a brilliant victory for the Americans.

315—Battle of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain

The British now attempted to cut the states in two by sending an army down the valley of the Hudson, as they had tried to do with Burgoyne, in the Revolution. A large force was sent from Canada consisting of twelve thousand veterans from Wellington's victorious European army. They advanced toward Plattsburg, N. Y., and their fleet on Lake Champlain gave battle to the American fleet under Commodore Macdonough. The American squadron nearly annihilated the British ships. The small army at Plattsburg also fought gallantly, and the British fled back to Canada.



An old view of the Capitol at Washington

316—Ravages Along the Coast

The whole Atlantic coast was now blockaded by the British fleet, and towns were destroyed whenever possible. Admiral Cockburn ravaged the country along the Ches-

peake and General Ross and a force marched on Washington and captured the city. They disgraced themselves by burning the Capitol, the Library, the White House, and other public buildings in the unprotected city.



The Star Spangled Banner at Fort McHenry

317—The Star Spangled Banner

The English, leaving Washington, sailed to attack Baltimore. An army was landed, and the fleet bombarded Fort McHenry near the city. Neither was successful. The British General Ross, who burned Washington, was killed and his force withdrew. During this bombardment Francis Scott Key wrote the national song, the Star Spangled Banner. He had gone on board a British ship, under a flag of truce. All during the long night he anxiously watched his beloved country's flag on the ramparts of the fort.

318—Treaty of Peace

Peace was made by a treaty signed at the city of Ghent on December 24, 1814. But news travelled slowly then, by sailing ship, and before the treaty was made known in

America, the great battle of New Orleans had been fought, Jan. 8, 1815.

319—Battle of New Orleans

The British General Packenham, with twelve thousand veterans, thought he could capture the city of New Orleans and so control the Mississippi River. General Andrew (free) became a state, in 1820, and Missouri



Emigrants to the West

Jackson, "Old Hickory," was there to meet him. He had a smaller force of Americans, but every one of them was a marksman and a backwoodsman who knew no fear. Jackson entrenched his army behind cotton bales and sand bags and awaited the English charge. Time after time the English advanced only to be swept back by a terrible fire. Packenham and several other high officers were killed. The veterans of scores of battles could not stand the withering

fire of the Americans. The British were totally defeated, lost seven hundred killed, fourteen hundred wounded and five hundred prisoners. The Americans had seven killed and six wounded.

320—Results of the War

The results of the war of 1812. (often called the second
Banner



The English, leaving Washington, sailed to attack Baltimore. An army was landed, and the fleet bombarded Fort McHenry near the city. Neither was successful. The British General Ross, who burned Washington, was killed and his force withdrew. During this bombardment Francis Scott Key wrote the national song, the Star Spangled Banner. He had gone on board a British ship, under a flag of truce.

James Monroe, a republican, — All during the war, in 1816, by a great majority of votes.

Under Monroe the Government was principally concerned in reducing the national debt and reviving and advancing commerce and manufacture.

322—New States

Slaves had originally been owned in the Northern as well as the Southern States, but the practise had gradually

died out in the north. It was not profitable in the South the cotton crop needed negro labor which was firmly established.

Each of the six years, from 1816 to 1821, saw the admission of a state to the Union. In 1816, Indiana (free) came in. In 1817, Mississippi (slave) was admitted. Illinois (free) followed, in 1818, and Alabama (slave), in 1819. Maine (free) became a state, in 1820, and Missouri (slave), in 1821.



Emigrants to the West

323—Cumberland Road

The valley of the Mississippi was rapidly filling up with settlers and a means of easy access across the Alleghenies was necessary. A bill was passed, in 1817, providing for the construction of a National road from Cumberland, Maryland, to Wheeling, West Virginia. It was called the Cumberland road and was afterward extended through Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois.

It was well constructed, made an easy route across the mountains and aided greatly in the development of the West. In those days this was a great undertaking for the National Government, in fact was considered as big a job in its time, as was the Panama Canal later on.

324—Trouble in Florida

In 1817, the Seminole Indians went on the warpath along the borders of Georgia and Alabama. The Seminoles were a Florida tribe. They were assisted in their onslaught by bands of Creek Indians, runaway slaves, outlaws, and pirates who infested the Spanish territory. The American force sent against them was not successful. General Jackson was put in command, and "Big Knife," as the Indians called him, raised a force of Tennessee riflemen, and overran the country. The fact that it was Spanish territory did not bother Jackson, and he even took possession of one of their forts at St. Marks. Here he found two Englishmen, Arbuthnot and Ambuster, who had incited the Indians to the uprising. Jackson arrested them, found them guilty and executed them. He then marched on Pensacola, took the town and compelled the Spanish to withdraw to Havana.

325—Florida Purchased. Alabama Admitted.

Spain and England were greatly aroused and threatened war, but Jackson was more popular than ever with his countrymen. Finally the King of Spain decided that it would cost more than it was worth to defend Florida, and sold it to the United States for five millions of dollars (Feb. 22, 1819). This was a splendid purchase for the United States. It completed the coast line from Maine to Mexico and removed a source of trouble at the border.

In December, 1819, Alabama became a state, making twenty-two in all.

326—The Slavery Question

The opposition to slavery had for years been growing in the Northern States of the Union. But slavery was increasing in the South, where, as we have learned, slaves were most useful in raising the cotton crop. About this time two new states asked for admission. They were Maine, in New England, and Missouri, which had been carved out of the Louisiana purchase. A heated debate arose in Congress as to whether Missouri should be admitted as a free or a slave state. The debate even became bitter, but a solution was finally proposed by Henry Clay.



Henry Clay

327—Missouri Compromise

Under Clay's plan Maine was admitted as a free state and Missouri as a slave state. But a law was also passed regulating slavery in all new states to be organized out of the Louisiana purchase. The new states lying north of the southerly boundary of Missouri ($36^{\circ} 30'$) were to be free states. All new states south of this line were to be slave states. This bill was called the Missouri Compromise and settled the slavery question for some years.

328—Re-elected. South American Republics

The prosperity of the country was great and Monroe was re-elected, in 1820, by all but one electoral vote.

The Spanish colonies of South America had taken advan-

tage of the Napoleonic wars to declare themselves free. In doing so they had the sympathy of the American republic, and, in 1822, a bill was passed in which Congress recognized the independence of the South American Republics.

329—"The Holy Alliance." Russia in the Pacific.

Spain, however, was anxious to recover her colonies and looked about in Europe for help in the undertaking. The most likely help would come from the "Holy Alliance" of Russia, Prussia, and Austria. Russian colonists from Alaska were spreading down the coast toward California. Monroe feared that, in return for help to regain her colonies, Spain would cede California to Russia. Thus the Pacific coast would be forever closed to the United States.



James Monroe

330—Monroe Doctrine

In his message to Congress, in 1823, Monroe announced the policy of the United States regarding other American countries. This policy has taken an important place in American history as the Monroe Doctrine.

The principal points of this doctrine are:

- 1st.—The United States will not interfere with any existing colonies in America of any European power.
- 2nd.—The United States will view as an unfriendly act any attempt of a European power to control or oppress any independent country on the American continent.

3rd.—The American Continents are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power.

331—Effect

This doctrine effectively stopped Spain from any attempt to regain her colonies. It also put an end to colonization of the Pacific Coast by Russia.

332—Lafayette's Visit

In the summer of 1824, the whole country rejoiced at a visit of General Lafayette from France. The venerable Marquis, returning to the country he had helped to liberate, was received by many of the veteran patriots in company with whom he had fought. He visited the tomb of Washington and laid the corner stone of the Bunker Hill monument, fifty years after that memorable battle.

He sailed home to France in the frigate "Brandywine"—named after the battle in which he had first fought for America's freedom.

CHAPTER XLVI

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, SIXTH PRESIDENT

333—Adams' Administration (1825–29)

The electoral vote in 1824 failed to elect a President and for a second time the House of Representatives was called on to decide. They chose John Quincy Adams, a son of the second President.



John Quincy Adams

334—Transportation to and from the West

This period of the nation's history is one of development of transportation. The country west of the mountains was at a great disadvantage. It could reach no markets for its produce except by floating it down the great length of the Mississippi River. It cost too much in time and money to bring it across the mountains; and on the other hand all the manufactured articles used in this section had to be hauled over the mountains in wagons. The roads were bad and the cost was great.



The Erie Canal

335—Erie Canal

Now, as you have learned, there was an ancient route leading from New York City to the Great Lakes, by means of the Hudson and Mohawk valleys. This was almost a water level route, and along it Governor Clinton of New York decided to dig a great ditch—a canal which would

connect Lake Erie with the Atlantic. Work was started, in 1817, amidst the ridicule of many who believed it would never be finished. In eight years, however, the canal was finished. It had been carried over rivers on bridges, and a system of locks was built to raise the boats over such highlands as were met with.

336—Results

The great value of this canal to commerce may be imagined when it is known that it paid for itself in less than ten years.

Through its influence New York City became the metropolis of the New World. The trade of Pennsylvania and Maryland was threatened, and these states made haste to develop canals that would carry boats across the mountains. A great canal to be called the Chesapeake and Ohio was planned, and on July 4, 1828, President Adams dug the first spadeful of earth.

337—Railroads

On this same day the venerable Charles Carroll of Carrollton, the last living signer of the Declaration of Independence placed the stone which marked the beginning of the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad. This was the answer of the City of Baltimore to the canals of New York and Pennsylvania.

This little line of wooden rail, covered with strips of iron, was the first of the thousands of miles of splendid railroads which now unite all parts of the land. The influence of the canals and railroads on the country, particularly on the West, has been incalculable. They reach into every corner of the country and bring its most widely separated parts into easy communication. It is indeed through them that we are united in fact, as well as in name.

338—Fifty Years Free

In 1826, the semi-centennial (50 years) of American Independence was celebrated. By a strange coincidence both



Bunker Hill Monument

John Adams of Massachusetts and Thomas Jefferson of Virginia died on this day, July 4, 1826. No two men had done more to bring about the Declaration of Independence, on the fiftieth anniversary of which they passed away.

339—Tariff of 1828

A tariff is a tax placed on goods imported from foreign lands. It has two objects—to produce the revenue needed to run the government; and to raise the price of imported articles, so that home manufactures can

compete with them. It is possible to make some articles cheaper in foreign countries than in America, because labor there is not so well paid. In 1828, Congress passed a tariff bill which was highly protective to all American industries. This suited the people of the North and East, where large factories had been built and much manufacturing was done. But it was greatly disliked by the farmers of the South and West. Instead of being benefited they were forced to pay higher for their manufactured supplies. This tariff was called by them the "Tariff of Abominations."

CHAPTER XLVII

ANDREW JACKSON, SEVENTH PRESIDENT

340—Jackson's Administration (1829-37)

Andrew Jackson, the Hero of New Orleans, was elected President for the four years, 1829-1833. The feeling against the tariff in the South grew continually more bitter. This section of the country felt that their soil and climate were such that they were destined for all time to be "staple states"; that is, states producing great cotton, tobacco, rice, and sugar crops and with almost no manufactures. They objected to being taxed on their supplies to benefit the manufacturing section of the country.

341—Nullification Act

In 1832, South Carolina passed a "Nullification Ordinance" which declared that the tariff law of Congress was null and void within her borders. The right of this state to so act was eloquently advocated in the Senate by Robert Haynes, of South Carolina. Daniel Webster, of Massachusetts, in his reply to Haynes, reached perhaps the summit of his powers as an orator.



Andrew Jackson "Old Hickory"

General Jackson was not the man to stand any action like nullification, which really amounted to secession. He ordered troops and a warship to Charleston and the hotheads were entirely overawed.

342—Tariff Compromise Bill

In this time of stress Henry Clay again came to the front. He offered a "Tariff Compromise" Bill which was acceptable to North and South. When told that the bill would probably hurt his chances of being President Henry Clay nobly replied, "I would rather be right than be President."

343—Abolition Movements

The feelings of the South, already hurt by the Tariff Act, were further angered by the opposition to slavery, which was becoming more violent in the North. Societies of Abolitionists were formed, which demanded the abolition of slavery, even if extreme measures were necessary to do away with the system. The question grew more intense as time went on. The states gradually became separated into two great groups, the Northern and Southern, free and slave. The interests and ideals of the sections differed more each year until they finally resulted in civil war.

344—Bank of the United States

General Jackson was re-elected for the term, 1833-1837. He had refused to continue the charter of the Bank of the United States during his first term, and on his re-election ordered the public money taken away from it and deposited in local banks. The Bank was forced to call in this money from people who had borrowed it, and this created great distress and many failures.

After the money had been deposited in local banks, it became easy to borrow and great speculation commenced, particularly in land.

345—Purchase of Indian Lands

The Indian's idea of selling property differed from the white man's. When the Indian sold his land, he meant

that the sale should not bind his children. He simply sold his own rights of the property. The United States government had made treaties with the Indian tribes, buying their lands from them. But when the government came to enforce the treaties, a second generation of Indians had grown up. They claimed they were not bound by the bargains of their fathers and refused to leave their lands.

346—Indian Troubles

During Jackson's administrations trouble of this kind resulted in the Black Hawk war in the Northwest, and the Cherokee and Seminole wars in the South. In each case the Indians were finally defeated and forced to abandon their lands and move further west.

347—New States

Arkansas (slave) was admitted, in 1836, and Michigan (free), in 1837.

CHAPTER XLVIII

MARTIN VAN BUREN, EIGHTH PRESIDENT

348—Van Buren's Administration (1837—41)

Martin Van Buren, of New York, was elected President, in 1837. He was of the same political belief as Jackson—against the United States Bank and Protection.

When Jackson transferred the public money from the Bank of the United States



Martin Van Buren

to local banks a great era of speculation took place. Many banks were founded, and each of them issued paper money. The United States accepted this money in payment for public lands, and so the whole country seemed to become involved in buying and selling lands. Cities and villages were planned throughout the entire country and all sorts of wildcat schemes were entered into.

349—Panic of 1837

Then Jackson issued the order that the government must have specie—that is gold or silver—in payment for lands. The full effect of this was felt in the early part of Van Buren's administration. Banks failed by the score. Business houses were forced to the wall, and one of the worst panics in the history of the country followed. Within two months from the time Van Buren became President, failures to the amount of \$150,000,000 occurred in New York and New Orleans.

350—Immigration

The number of immigrants entering the United States, up to the year 1830, was not very large. The population of the country had grown principally through the natural increase in births. Between 1830 and 1840, however, more than half a million foreigners arrived, and of these one half were Irish Catholics.

351—Opposition to Catholics

The native American population became alarmed at this influx of aliens. Some people advised denying the vote to newcomers, and the matter became a hot political question. Much unrest and considerable ill feeling and anti-Catholic rioting resulted. In Charlestown, Mass., the Ursuline Convent was burned down by a mob (1834). Ten years

later an anti-Catholic mob burned down two churches and a convent in Philadelphia, and threats of violence were made in New York. The Catholics of that city, under Archbishop Hughes, were determined to defend themselves, and their enemies did not carry out their threats. This ill-feeling continued in greater or less degree until it was lost in the excitement of the Civil War.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION IX

1. During the term of James Madison, fourth President, British aggression on the seas became unbearable. War was declared in June, 1812. The Americans attempted to invade Canada but without success. Detroit, and all Michigan, were disgracefully surrendered by Gen. Hull.

2. On the sea the Americans gained many glorious victories. On lake Erie, and later on Lake Champlain the British fleets were destroyed. On the other hand the British fleet ravaged the Atlantic coast, and their troops burned the national Capitol, Washington. Later on Michigan was regained by the Battle of the Thames, and the English received a terrible defeat at New Orleans.

3. The result of the War of 1812 was to show the world that America could and would defend her rights. It also resulted in many manufactures being started in this country, to make articles formerly imported from Europe.

4. James Monroe, fifth President, held office during a time of peace and expansion. A National Road was built across the Alleghany Mountains, to accommodate the Western settlers; and Florida was bought from Spain.

5. The anti-slavery party in the Northern States opposed the admission of Missouri to the Union as a slave state. This question was settled for some years by Henry Clay's Missouri Compromise Bill. This permitted slavery in Missouri, but prohibited it in any new state as far north as Missouri's southern boundary.

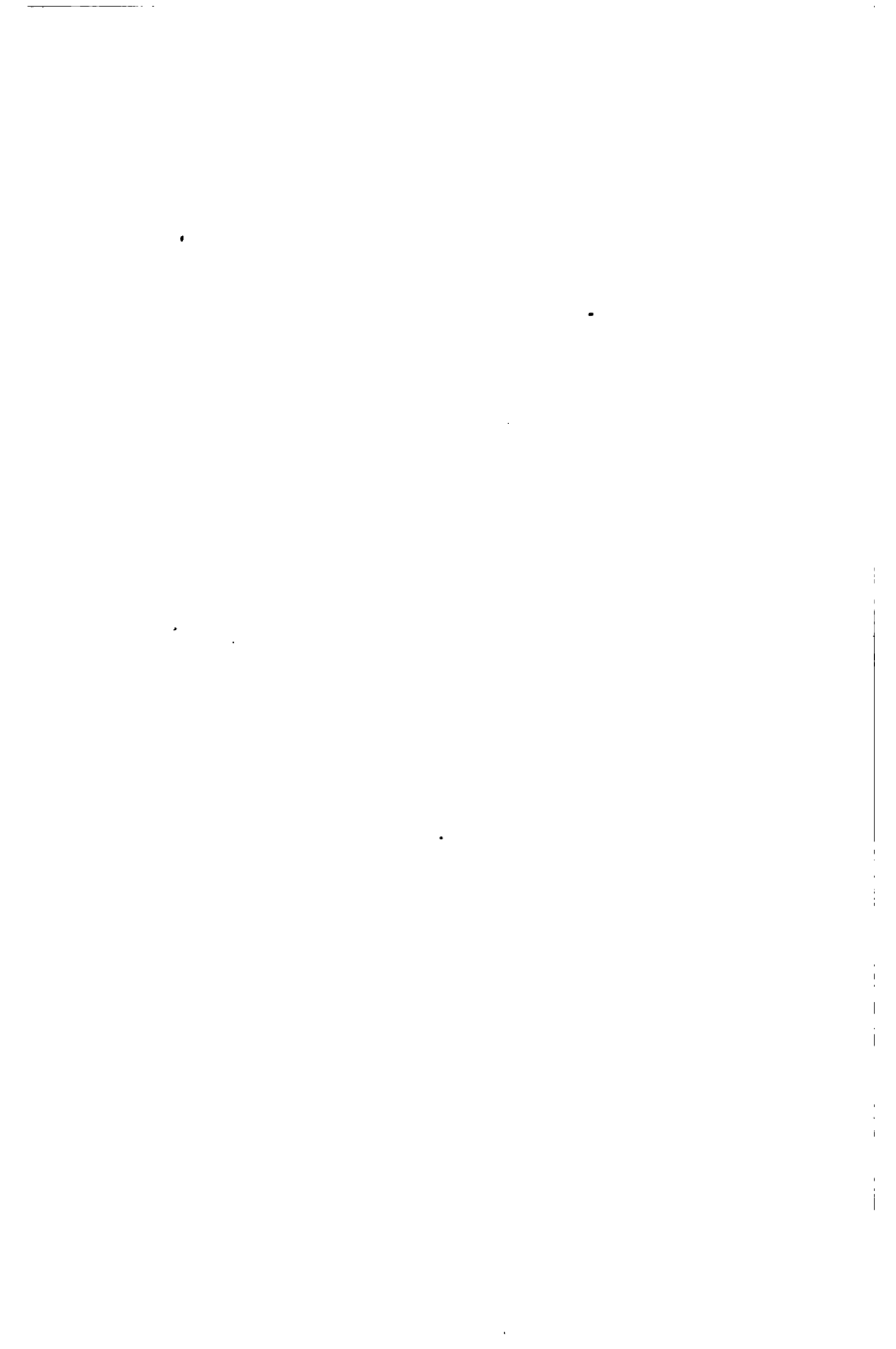
6. President Monroe was the author of the "Monroe Doctrine." By it the United States declared itself opposed to the establishment or further extension of European colonies in the Western Hemisphere.

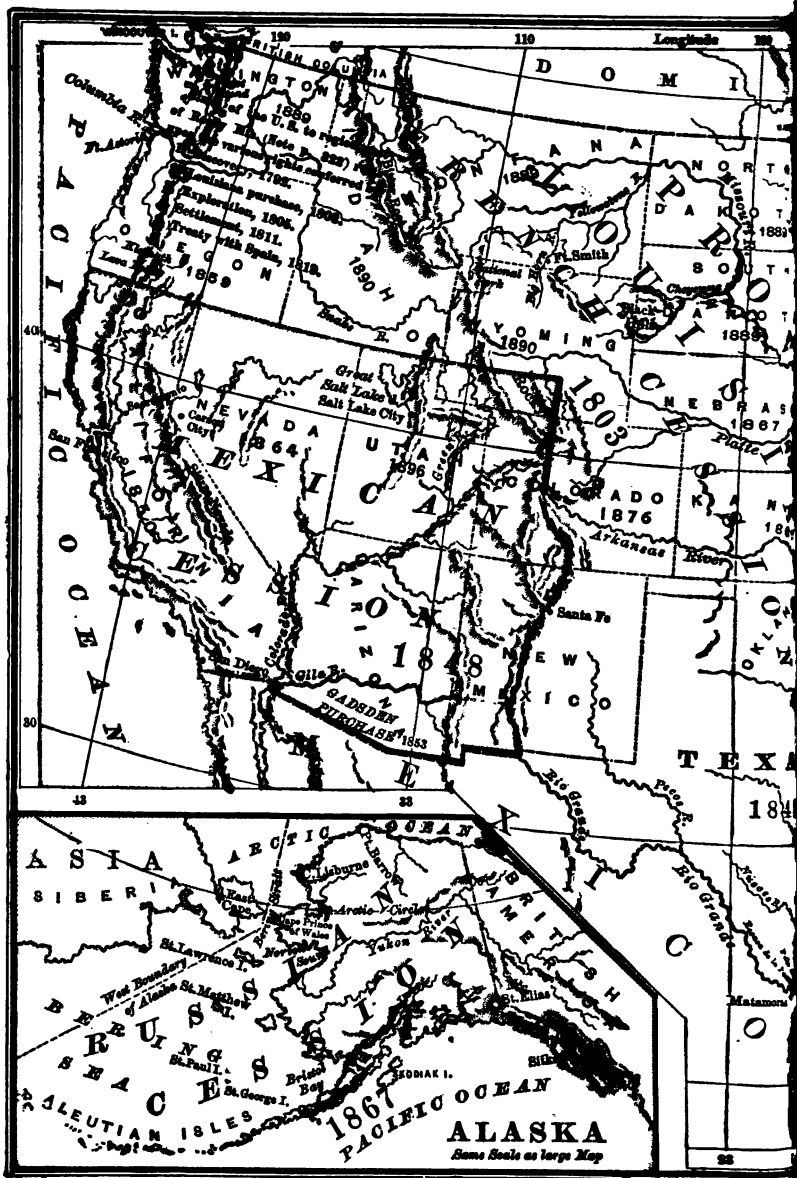
7. The term of John Quincy Adams, sixth President, was one of transportation development. The Erie Canal was opened. The Baltimore and Ohio Railroad was started. Other canals and railroads were projected.

8. The term of Andrew Jackson, seventh President, was memorable for the Nullification Act of South Carolina. By it this state sought to set aside a Tariff Act of Congress, which it did not like. This came very near being secession from the Union; Jackson's prompt action overawed the state.

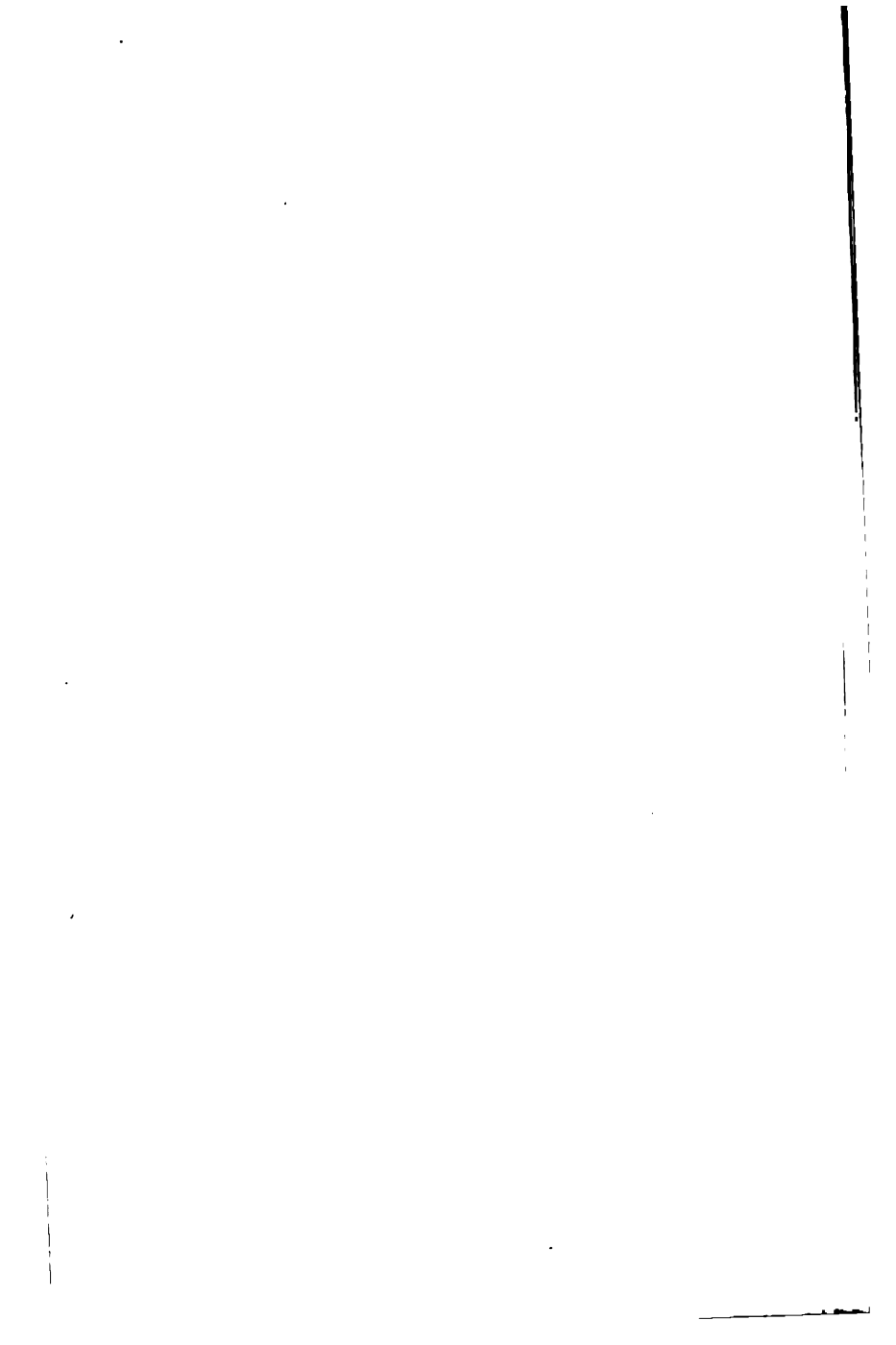
9. Martin Van Buren, eighth President, held office during a period of hard times. Many banks failed and factories were closed. But emigration increased and among the newcomers were many Catholics.

✓ 10. A bitter opposition to Catholics sprang up. So-called Native American parties were formed, and much violence resulted. People foolishly believed that Catholics could not make good Americans; that belief no longer exists, amongst intelligent people.









SECTION X

EXPANSION. THE SLAVERY QUESTION

CHAPTER XLIX

WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, NINTH PRESIDENT; JOHN TYLER, TENTH PRESIDENT

352—Harrison's Administration (1841)

General William Henry Harrison, the "Hero of Tippecanoe," was the Whig nominee for President. John Tyler of Virginia ran for Vice President. Martin Van Buren led

the Democrats, who were defeated for the first time since the election of Jefferson forty years before. However President Harrison held office but one month when he died. This was the first time a President died while in office. Vice President Tyler immediately took his place. (1841-45).



William H. Harrison

353—Texas Gains Independence

Encouraged by the Mexican Government, many Americans, mostly from the Southern States, had settled in Texas and had brought their slaves with them. Later on a law was passed forbidding slavery in Mexico, and much fric-

tion arose over the American-owned slaves. The Americans found the Mexican rule hard to bear and set up laws of their own making. Mexico would not sanction these, and a revolution ensued. In 1837, the Mexican Dictator, Santa Anna, was defeated at the bloody battle of San Jacinto. Texas then became an independent republic.

354—Annexation of Texas. Florida Admitted.

The Southern States were anxious to annex the country to the United States. From it could be carved slave states, which would balance new free states. This met with opposition in the North; but the day before his term of office ended Tyler signed the bill annexing Texas to the United States. Florida was admitted in 1845.

355—The Telegraph

The closing months of Tyler's term saw the first public test of the magnetic telegraph. For years amid great discouragements, Prof. Samuel F. B. Morse worked on a scheme to send messages over a wire by means of electricity.



Samuel F. B. Morse

In 1843 Morse persuaded Congress to give him \$30,000, and a short line was constructed from Washington to Baltimore. The first message sent over the wire was the quotation from the Bible, "What hath God wrought."

CHAPTER L

JAMES POLK, ELEVENTH PRESIDENT

356—Polk's Administration (1845-49)

In the election of 1844, Henry Clay, the Great Pacificator (Whig), was opposed by James K. Polk of Tennessee (Democrat). The election was more hotly contested than any before, and Polk was elected.

357—Mexican War

~~thought they could~~
wipe out Taylor with his six thousand men. Twenty thousand Mexicans advanced against the smaller force at Buena Vista. A terrific battle ensued, which the Americans won, and the whole country around the Rio Grande was then safely in their possession.



Americans at Chapultepec

362—The Third Army

General Scott, with the Third Army, was sent against the City of Mexico. The troops, twelve thousand strong, were transported on ships and landed near Vera Cruz. The

General Kearney, with the First Army, captured Santa Fé, in New Mexico after a wearisome march. Then Kearney set out with four hundred dragoons to take California. But he had not gone very far when he met the famous frontiers-

man, "Kit" Carson. Carson told him California had already been taken.

359—California Captured

On July 3, 1846, Commodore John Drake Sloat, of the U. S. Navy, had raised the flag over Monterey and then over San Francisco. Furthermore Col. John F. Fremont, who had been exploring in the neighborhood, had collected the American settlers in Northern California and had defeated the Mexicans in several engagements. Thus the whole of the great territory was taken for the Americans by a few brave and determined men.

Tyler signed the bill annexing Texas to the United States. Florida was admitted in 1845.

355—The Telegraph

The closing months of Tyler's term saw the first public test of the magnetic telegraph. For years amid great discouragements, Prof. Samuel F. B. Morse worked on a scheme to send messages over a wire by means of electricity.



360—The Second Army

General Taylor commanded the Second Army. It was increased in strength, with the idea of holding the Rio Grande and inflicting damage inland. Matamores was taken and

when reinforcements arrived Taylor attacked the garrison at Monterey. After a fierce fight a splendid victory resulted. The Americans overran the city and defeated the enemy in a running fight from house to house.

361—Buena Vista

The best part of Taylor's army was now withdrawn to go with the army of General Scott against Mexico City. The Mexicans under Santa Anna thought they could wipe out Taylor with his six thousand men. Twenty thousand Mexicans advanced against the smaller force at Buena Vista. A terrific battle ensued, which the Americans won, and the whole country around the Rio Grande was then safely in their possession.



Americans at Chapultepec

362—The Third Army

General Scott, with the Third Army, was sent against the City of Mexico. The troops, twelve thousand strong, were transported on ships and landed near Vera Cruz. The army and fleet under Commodore Connor bombarded the town, forcing its surrender, and then the advance on Mexico City commenced. This was a long and tiresome march, through a mountainous country, which was difficult to invade but easy to defend.

363—Cerra Gordo

The Mexicans made a stand at a mountain pass called Cerra Gordo. The attack of the Americans was so fierce that the enemy was completely routed. Their commander Santa Anna escaped with difficulty on a mule. He left his wooden leg and his money behind him.

The city of Pueblo was taken, and then, when reinforcements arrived, Scott started across the mountains for Mexico City.

364—Capture of Mexico City

The city was defended by thirty thousand Mexicans in well fortified positions. On the 20th of August, the Americans attacked in several places and gained five separate victories, driving the Mexicans into the fortifications of Chapultepec. The outer defences of Chapultepec were stormed and taken, and their guns turned on the main fortress. This, too, fell five days later, and, on Sept. 14, the American army, now but six thousand strong, entered the Capital of Mexico.

365—Peace and Results

This ended the war. On July 4, 1848, a proclamation of peace was issued. Mexico ceded to the United States all of upper California, New Mexico and the Texas territory to the Rio Grande. The United States paid Mexico \$15,000,000 and paid several millions in claims for her account.

It was then sixty-five years after the close of the Revolution and American territory stretched from the Atlantic to the Pacific Oceans.

366—A Catholic Region

The territory which now became part of the United States was historic from a Catholic view-point. Sante Fé, the

second oldest city in our country, had been a Catholic mission center for three hundred years before it became part of the United States. The Indians had been converted and civilized, and the work of the Catholic priests had continued without interruption.


367—California Missions

About the end of the seventeenth century the Jesuits began their work of conversion among the Indians of lower California, and for seventy years the work was carried on, until, in 1767, they were expelled from Spanish territory.

They were followed by the Franciscans, the evidences of whose work still remain. Founded in San Diego, shortly before our Revolutionary War, these missions expanded until more than twenty stations were established as far north as San Francisco.

368—Work of the Missionaries

In these missions the Indians learned not only Christianity but also civilization. Farming, fruit and wine growing, and cattle-raising were engaged in by the natives, under the guidance of the good priests. All this was changed when Mexico became an independent nation. The missions were confiscated by the state, the natives dispersed, and the buildings allowed to fall into a state of ruin and decay. Many of these ruins are still to be seen.



CHAPTER LI

THE OREGON TERRITORY

369—Oregon

The territory on the Pacific coast north of California had long been claimed by both England and America. Various

attempts were made to settle the dispute but without success. The Americans claimed ownership up to the parallel of $54^{\circ} 40'$; "Fifty-four forty or fight" became the popular cry. But wiser counsels prevailed, and a compromise was reached, placing the American boundary at the 49th parallel. The vast Oregon country thus became American soil (Jan. 15, 1846).

370—Father de Smet

Oregon was the scene of the labors of the saintly Father de Smet, a Jesuit priest. He reached Oregon, in 1841, with a large company of emigrants from Missouri. Shortly afterward he brought out six Sisters of Notre Dame, of Namur, from his native country, Belgium. Father de Smet founded missions among the Flathead Indians, and the church progressed with great rapidity in Oregon. "The Apostle of

the Rockies," as he has been called, gave his whole life to work among the Indian tribes.

371—New States

Iowa and Wisconsin, two free states, were admitted, in 1846 and 1848, and offset Florida and Texas, slave states, admitted shortly before. There were now fifteen free and fifteen slave states.

372—Gold Discovered 1848

Miners at work searching for gold



The treaty of peace with Mexico had hardly been signed, when a laborer, working on a mill race on the American River, in California, discovered some particles of gold in the sand. The news soon reached

the East and Europe, and a wild scramble to reach California ensued. Profitable businesses, well cultivated farms, lucrative positions, all were abandoned and the gold-crazed people rushed for California.

373—The “Forty-Niners”

The overland route was hardly known, and many gave up their lives in attempting it. Others sailed around Cape



San Francisco in early days

Horn or crossed Central America and sailed up the coast by ship. Every kind of vessel was used, and many ships were wrecked along the coast.

The population of California increased with great strides. San Francisco grew in a short time to be a city of 12,000 people; and soon a quarter of a million people inhabited the region.

374—Internal Affairs

While these stirring events had been happening, the country was progressing in many other ways. Six thousand miles of railroad had been built, and the telegraph had spread its wires in every direction. The population rose to twenty-three millions.

The years of 1846 and 1847, saw the terrible famine in Ireland; many thousands escaped from that suffering land to free America.

In 1846, the Sixth Council of Baltimore placed the United States under the patronage of the Immaculate Conception of the Blessed Virgin Mary.

375—Reaper. Other Inventions

In 1834, the horse drawn reaper, by means of which vast areas of grain or grass could be cut, was invented by Cyrus McCormack. Other farming implements were perfected and greatly stimulated agriculture. In 1836, coal commenced to be profitably used on railroads and in making iron.

In 1838, the screw propeller for steamships was perfected by John Ericsson. This greatly increased the distance steamships could go and the speed of their travel. In 1839, the invention of the steam hammer did much to lessen the cost and increase the quality of iron manufactures. In 1846, a workable sewing machine was invented. The power loom for manufacturing cotton and wool was still further perfected and increased the output of the factories of the North.

CHAPTER LII

ZACHARY TAYLOR, TWELFTH PRESIDENT; MILLARD FILLMORE, THIRTEENTH PRESIDENT

376—Taylor's Administration (1849-50)

The popularity of General Zachary Taylor, on account of his victories in the Mexican War, brought him the nomination of the Whig party. The Democratic strength was split, and Taylor was elected by a small majority.

California was anxious to gain statehood and applied for

5. Zachary Taylor, twelfth President, had to deal with the slavery question, made acute again by California's desire to enter the Union. Taylor died in office and was succeeded by Millard Fillmore, the thirteenth President.

6. The Omnibus Bill, or "Compromise of 1850," was an attempt to settle the slavery question by making California free, but allowing other territories, yet to be made from the Mexican cession, to decide for themselves whether they would be free or slave. It also allowed officers to capture fugitive slaves who had escaped to the North. This greatly provoked the North.

7. Franklin Pierce, the fourteenth President, saw the slavery question become still more grave. The Missouri Compromise was repealed and the law of "Squatter Sovereignty" enacted, allowing Kansas and Nebraska to decide on slavery by vote. This led to a bloody civil war in Kansas.

8. James Buchanan, fifteenth President, was in office a year when the Dred Scott Decision was handed down by the Supreme Court. This seemed to permit slave ownership in any state and was bitterly resented in the North. A fanatic named John Brown raided the Arsenal at Harper's Ferry in an attempt to free the slaves. This incensed the South. The feeling on both sides was now intense.

9. A series of debates on slavery between Abraham Lincoln and Stephen A. Douglas resulted in dividing the Democratic party. Lincoln was nominated for the Presidency by the anti-slavery Republican party. His platform was squarely against the extension of slavery. The Southern States threatened to leave the Union if he was elected. Lincoln was elected.

10. In December 1860 South Carolina seceded, followed by Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Texas. President Buchanan claimed to have no right to stop them. A new union called the Confederate States of America was formed.

BIOGRAPHIES

BIOGRAPHIES

Jackson

ANDREW JACKSON, a celebrated general and statesman, and one of our most noted presidents was the son of an Irish immigrant, a day laborer. The future president was born in North Carolina, March 15, 1767. Free schools were unknown in his boyhood days, and he recieved but very little school instruction. Taking early an interest in politics he was elected Congressman and afterward United States Senator from Tennessee. When, in our second war with England, an army of English veteran troops landed near New Orleans, Jackson was sent to meet the enemy. The Americans had never been in a battle and knew nothing of military tactics. But most of them were backwoodsmen and could shoot straight, and were not afraid to meet the redcoats, though these outnumbered the Americans two to one. General Jackson issued a proclamation in which he denounced England as "the highway robber of the nations"; and then, behind earth breastworks, his little army awaited the English attack. It was made in full force, on Jan. 8, 1815, and the Americans won a decisive and glorious victory. General Jackson was elected President of the United States, in 1828, and re-elected in 1832. After his second term was ended he retired to his home near Nashville where he died in 1845.

Perry

OLIVER HAZARD PERRY, a distinguished officer of the American navy, was born in Newport, Rhode Island, in

1785. Near Put-in-Bay, on Lake Erie, Sept. 13, 1813, he defeated a superior British fleet, the conflict lasting only three hours. At that time Perry, a young commander, had never seen a battle; while the British Captain was a veteran who had won honor under Lord Nelson, England's greatest naval hero. The victory electrified the American people and created a profound impression in all European countries. Perry while commanding a squadron in the West Indies—he was a Commander then—died of fever on the island of Trinidad, August, 1819.

Macdonough

THOMAS MACDONOUGH, a famous officer of the United States navy, was born in Newcastle, Delaware, in 1784. In September, 1814, the British government sent an army under Sir George Prevost, south from Canada, and a strong fleet of war vessels down Lake Champlain. The object of this expedition was to cut off the New England states from the rest of the Union. The British army was besieging Plattsburg, when the British fleet attacked the American vessels anchored near by, under Macdonough's command. Though much stronger than the Americans, the British were almost annihilated by Macdonough's little squadron. Then the besieging army became panic-stricken and fled back to Canada. The victory was one of the most brilliant and decisive ever won on water. Macdonough died, in 1825.

Clay

HENRY CLAY, an eminent statesman and orator was born in Hanover County, Virginia, on April 12, 1777. He practiced law in Lexington, Kentucky, was elected to Congress, and for several terms held the high office of Speaker of the House of Representatives. He was a brilliant orator

and wielded great influence on our nation's political life. His death took place on June 27, 1852, in Washington. One of his speeches contains the noble declaration—

"I owe a paramount allegiance to the Union; a subordinate one to my own state."

And it was Henry Clay that first said: "I would rather be right than President."

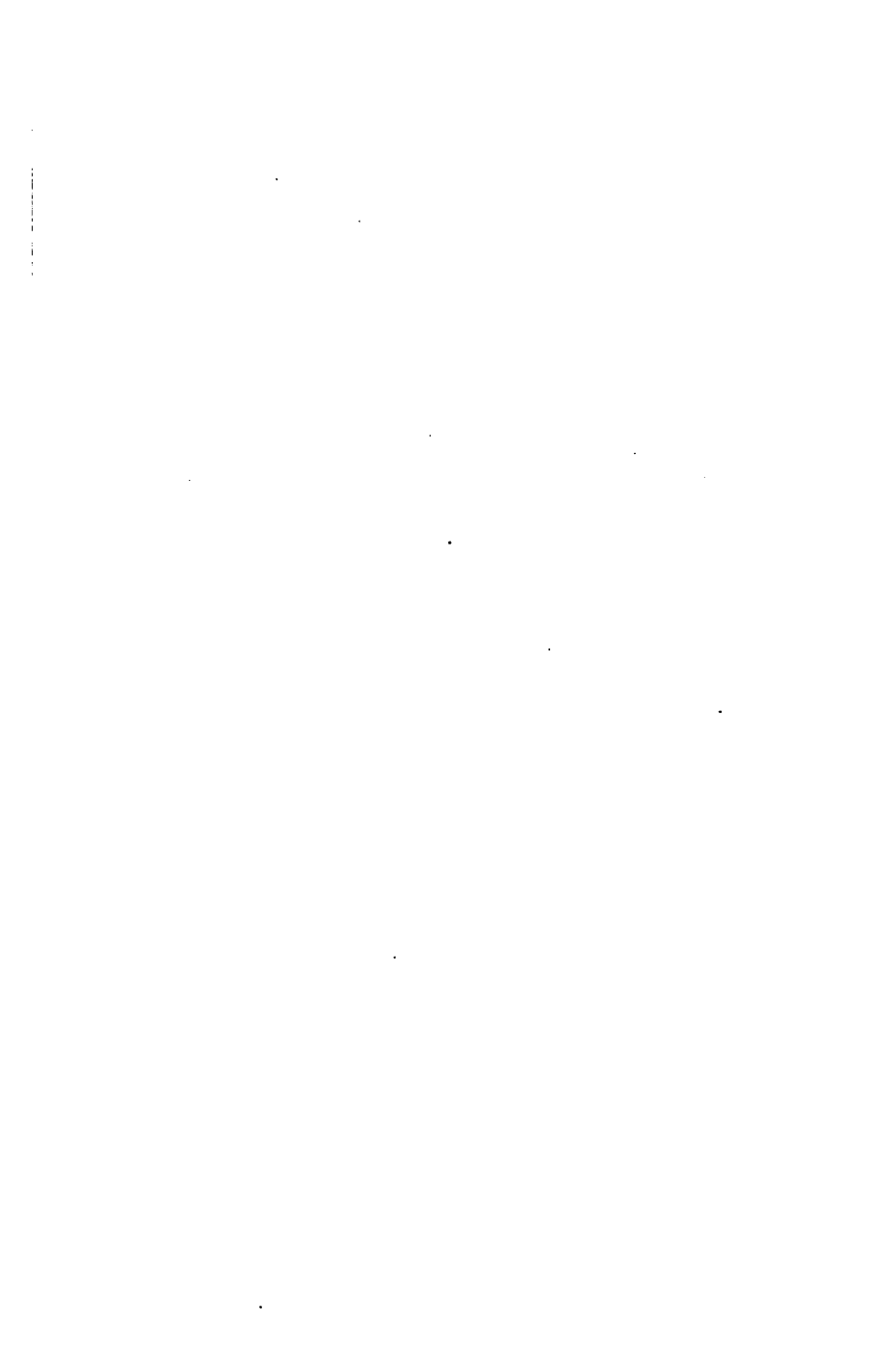
Webster

DANIEL WEBSTER, a celebrated orator and statesman, born at Salisbury, N. H., Jan. 18, 1782. After some years of practice as a lawyer, he was chosen U. S. Senator from Massachusetts, in 1828, he being then a resident of Boston. He is regarded as America's greatest orator. One of his finest speeches in the Senate of the United States closed with the immortal words: "Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable."

De Smet

FATHER PETER DE SMET, S.J., "the Apostle of the Rockies," is one of the finest characters in our history. He was born in Belgium, and, while still young, was fired with a zeal to work among the Indians in the far west of North America. He offered himself as a candidate for the Society of Jesus, for the American mission.

De Smet was ordained priest in the Maryland province, and, in 1838, finally realized his ambition by being sent to work among the Indians in Kansas. The next thirty-five years of his life were spent helping the poor red-men. He penetrated into the Rocky Mountains to reach them, and was rewarded by the conversion of thousands to Catholicity.



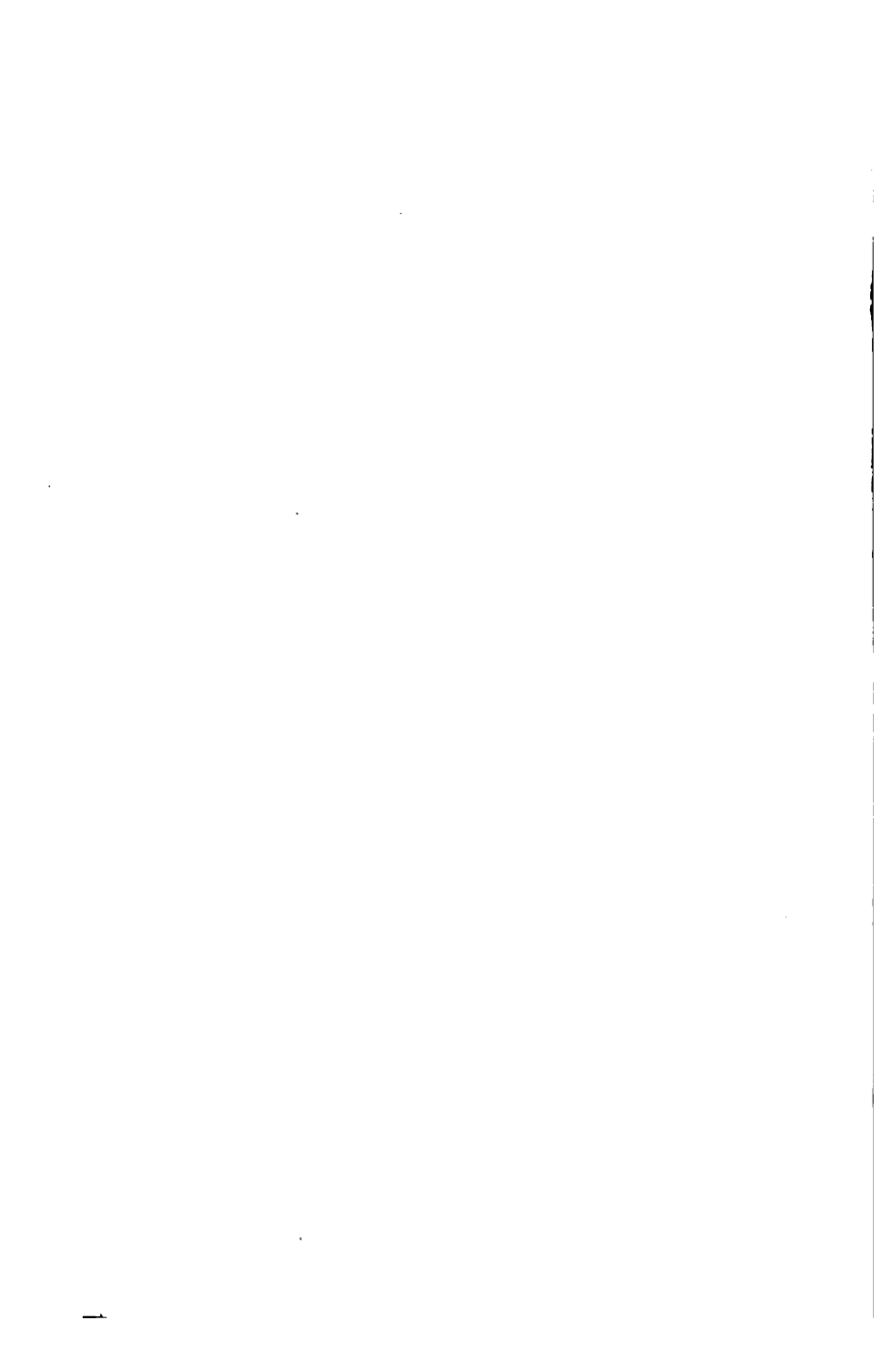
[illegible]

A horizontal number line with arrows at both ends. It is marked with the numbers 80 and 100. There are tick marks every 5 units, with labels at 80, 85, 90, 95, and 100. A point is plotted at the tick mark for 95.

87 West from

Longitude 10 West from





saluting his flag and marching out with colors flying and drums beating.



Fort Sumter

400—The Effect

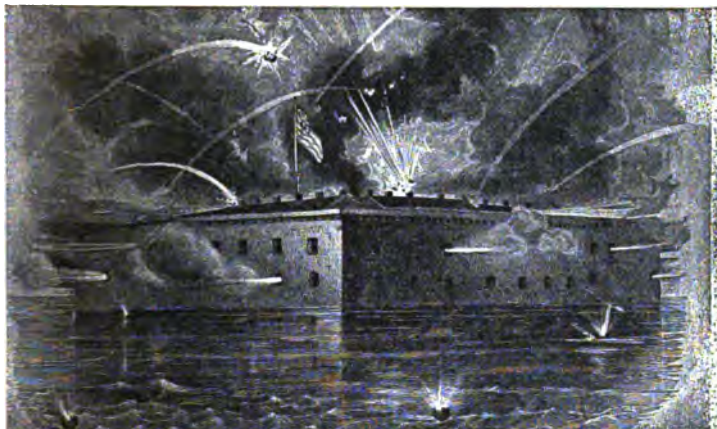
The fact that the South had fired on the old flag was electrical in its result. All thoughts of peace were abandoned in both North and South, and the country separated into two compact parts, each resolved to fight it out to a finish. Lincoln's call for seventy-five thousand volunteers was answered by three hundred thousand men.

On the other hand Virginia, North Carolina, Arkansas and Tennessee quickly joined the Confederacy. The arsenal at Harpers Ferry and the great navy yard at Norfolk, with all their much needed supplies, were seized for the South. The Southern capital was moved to Richmond.

401—The Border States

_____ and Fort Mifflin about 1861, Anderson surrendered. He was allowed the honors of war,

saluting his flag and marching out with colors flying and drums beating.



Fort Sumter

400—The Effect

The fact that the South had fired on the old flag was electrical in its result. All thoughts of peace were abandoned in both North and South, and the country separated into two compact parts, each resolved to fight it out to a finish. Lincoln's call for seventy-five thousand volunteers was answered by three hundred thousand men.

On the other hand Virginia, North Carolina, Arkansas and Tennessee quickly joined the Confederacy. The arsenal at Harpers Ferry and the great navy yard at Norfolk, with all their much needed supplies, were seized for the South. The Southern capital was moved to Richmond.

401—The Border States

It now became important for both sides to possess the border states.

Sharp fighting in Missouri saved it for the Union, and the people of Kentucky, Delaware, and Maryland also decided to be loyal. A large part of Virginia remained loyal to the Union and forty-one counties were formed into the new state of West Virginia (Admitted 1863).

402—The Two Sections

Let us now glance over the advantages and disadvantages of the contending sections of the country. In population the North had about four times as many white people as the South. This was a great advantage. It permitted the armies to be easily filled up and yet allowed industry and trade to follow an almost normal course.

403—Advantages of the North

Then the North was the manufacturing section. It had great factories for arms and ammunition and for supplying all the needs of the people. The South had virtually none of these. It depended entirely on outside manufactures, and the North quickly drew a blockade around which prevented imports. This was a tremendous disadvantage to the South. Then the North was also the richest section in material wealth, and money counts very heavily in war.

404—Advantages of the South

On the other hand, the South was fighting in her own country, which she knew well. She did not have to conquer, but only to resist. Her people were entirely of one mind, which was not true of the Northern people, of which a large faction called "Copperheads," opposed the war. The Southerners, being mostly farmers, were used to outdoor life and were excellent marksmen. They made splendid soldiers. Many of the recruits of the North came from

cities and knew nothing about life in the open or how to handle firearms.

405—Comparison

So the North may be said to have had an advantage in numbers, in money, and in material. For a long time the South was able to match these advantages by the skill of commanders, and the unity and fighting qualities of her people.

CHAPTER LVI

BULL RUN

406—First Bloodshed

The aged General Scott was in command of the Union Army. Volunteer regiments had been rushed to Washington to protect the capital. The first on the scene was the 6th Massachusetts. While marching through Baltimore, this regiment was attacked and seven of its men killed; thus the first blood of the Civil War was shed on April 19, the anniversary of the battle of Lexington.

407—Bull Run

Many regiments were gathered in Washington, and the cry of "On to Richmond" was heard on all sides. The army was not ready; it was raw and untrained, but the advance was ordered.

The Union forces, thirty thousand strong, met the Confederates about thirty miles south of Washington, near a small stream called Bull Run. At first the Union soldiers drove the Southerners back. These were rallied however by General T. J. Jackson, who stood with his troops like a "stone wall." By the name of "Stonewall" Jackson he has ever since been known.

While the Union troops were fighting hard to break the Confederates' line a second time, a fresh force of 1,700 Southerners attacked them on their right flank (side) and poured in a heavy cross fire.

The raw Union troops broke in a panic and fled toward Washington.



Gen. George B. McClellan

408—The Effect

The defeat of Bull Run taught the North that the war was a serious one. Five hundred million dollars and five hundred thousand men were voted by Congress; and General George B. McClellan was appointed to command. He was a graduate of West Point and had served with distinction in the Mexican War.

409—The Blockade

The President realized the need the South would have for supplies of all kinds and ordered the navy to blockade the coast. There were but few vessels in the navy; but before the end of the year more than two hundred and fifty ships of all kinds had been bought or built, and the ports of the South were closed up.

410—Envoys to Europe

Archbishop Hughes, of New York, and Thurlow Weed

were sent as unofficial representatives of the United States to the European governments and greatly helped the Union cause.

411—The First Year of the War

The important events of the first year of the war were:

The Union forces were defeated at Bull Run, the principal battle.

The Border States were saved for the Union.

A blockade of the Southern ports was established by the navy. The Union armies cut off their supplies by land.

CHAPTER LVII

GRANT. FARRAGUT. THE MONITOR AND MERRIMAC

412—1862. War in the West

Near the border of Kentucky and Tennessee the Cumberland and Tennessee Rivers are very close together. The Confederates held two strong positions there: Fort Henry on the Tennessee, and Fort Donelson on the Cumberland. In February 1862, an army under General Ulysses S. Grant, helped by Commodore Foote with some gunboats, captured these forts; the Confederates were forced to withdraw and abandon all of Kentucky and most of Tennessee.

413—Shiloh

Grant then pushed on South. The Confederates fell on his forces at Shiloh (Apr. 7, 1862), and a terrible battle followed. The Union men were gradually driven back to the very banks of the Tennessee. Here they rallied, and fresh troops under Buell arriving, they in turn drove back the Southerners. The next morning another fight forced the

Confederates to withdraw to Corinth. This they were obliged to evacuate not long after.

In the meantime other Union forces, both army and navy, had been doing good work along the Mississippi. Island Number Ten was captured with seven thousand prisoners and, in June, Memphis was occupied.



The Union charge at Fort Donelson

414—Farragut at New Orleans

While these operations were in progress along the upper Mississippi, the Union Navy was busy clearing the lower part of the river. A great fleet under Admiral Farragut attacked the forts guarding New Orleans. Unable to reduce these forts, Farragut decided to run past them. This he accomplished under a tremendous fire; and then met and sunk the fleet which had been waiting above the forts. New Orleans capitulated (April 25), and the forts below the city were then forced to surrender.

415—Mississippi River

Farragut sailed up the river captured Baton Rouge and Natchez, and, running past the batteries at Vicksburg, joined the Union forces above.

The Confederates now held but two points on the great river, Vicksburg and Port Hudson. These, however, were of great importance because the Red River entered the Mississippi between them. On this river supplies of all kinds could be brought to the Confederacy from Texas and Arkansas.

416—"Merrimac" and "Monitor"

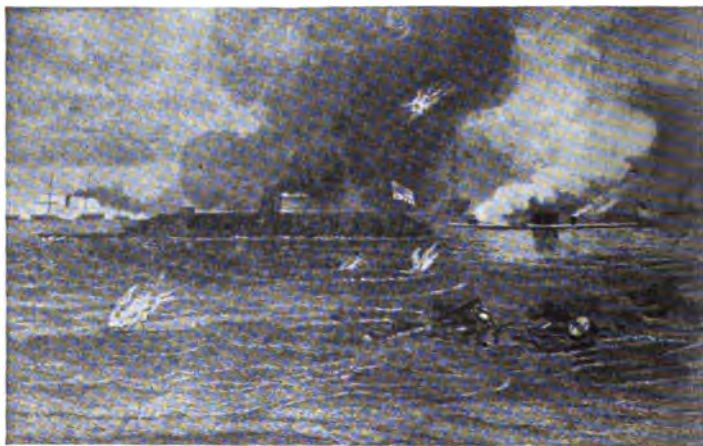
The steam frigate "Merrimac" had been sunk at Norfolk, by the Union officers, to prevent its falling into the Confederates' hands when that navy yard was taken. The Confederates raised the vessel and named her "Virginia." They cut her down until her deck was only slightly above the water line and added an iron prow or ram. On the deck was built a slanting shed of railroad iron, with portholes for guns.

417—"Cumberland" Sunk

The Union fleet of wooden vessels lay in Hampton Roads, and on March 8th, the new iron-clad sailed down to attack them. The "Merrimac" steered directly for the "Cumberland." The terrific broadsides from the Union ship rattled harmlessly off the iron armor of the "Merrimac," which continued on her way and rammed a great hole in the side of the "Cumberland." The "Congress" was then run ashore to escape sinking, but the "Merrimac" took up a position astern and rained shot into her until she surrendered. Then the Confederate ship withdrew to Norfolk. It was a good day's work and the next day the rest of the Union fleet could be destroyed.

418—The "Monitor" Arrives

That night a curious looking vessel arrived in the Roads. It was the "Monitor" called by many "the Yankee cheese-box on a raft." Built by Captain Ericsson, in New York, the "Monitor" was a small ship whose iron clad deck was raised but a few inches above the water line. A round iron turret, containing two large guns, was built on the deck. It could be revolved by machinery, allowing the guns to fire in any direction.



The "Monitor" and "Merrimac"

419—The Battle

On the morning of March 9 the "Merrimac" came down to finish her work. But the little "Monitor" steamed out to meet her and sent two monster cannon balls smashing against the Confederate's side. Then commenced the battle of the iron-clads, the first in the history of the world. For four hours the two ships smashed away at one another often with side touching side. Five times the "Merrimac" tried to ram

the little Yankee but without success. Finally, unable to conquer her small opponent the "Merrimac" withdrew to Norfolk.

420—Effect

It may be truly said this battle saved the Union. Had the "Monitor" not appeared on the scene it is probable that the "Merrimac," and others of her kind, would have opened up the blockade; sailed up the Potomac and held Washington at their mercy; destroyed the fleet; and perhaps secured the aid and intervention of foreign nations.

CHAPTER LVIII

LEE. McCLELLAN. EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION

421—Operations in the East

While these important events were occurring, the main armies in the east were preparing for action. General McClellan, in command of the Army of the Potomac, landed on the peninsula between the York and James rivers, and started in the direction of Richmond. The Confederates assailed him at every step. A month was lost besieging Yorktown, and then, at Williamsburg and Fair Oaks, the Confederates withdrew only after inflicting great damage on McClellan.

422—Robert E. Lee

At Fair Oaks, General Robert E. Lee took command of the Confederates. Lee was the son of "Light Horse Harry" Lee, of Revolutionary fame. His wife was a descendant of Martha Washington. He himself was a graduate of West Point and at the opening of the war was offered the command of the Union armies. This he sadly declined, feeling

it his duty to go with his native state. Lee was a man of noble character and unblemished reputation.



Robert E. Lee

423—Peninsular Campaign Fails

McClellan was now meeting with great difficulties. The streams were much swollen and transportation was, difficult. McClellan though within sight of Richmond, was forced to withdraw to the River James. He defeated the Confederates at Malvern Hill, but it was an empty victory and the Peninsular campaign failed.

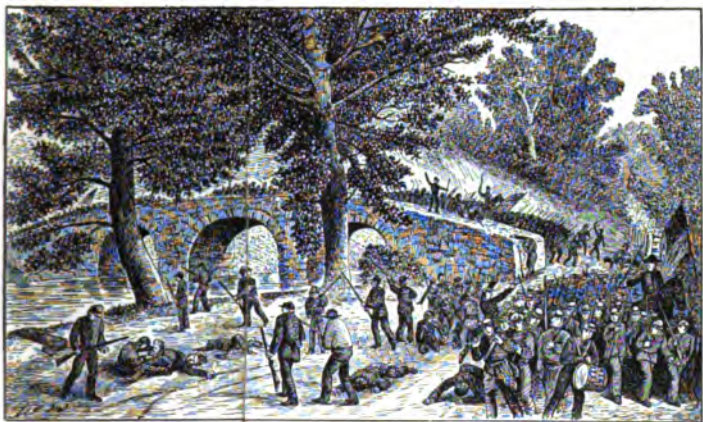
424—Cedar Mountain and Second Bull Run

The gloom in the North was deep, and Lincoln issued a call for three hundred thousand more volunteers. Lee and Jackson fell on the Union forces under Pope, which were then protecting Washington, and defeated them at Cedar Mountain. McClellan was ordered up with reinforcements, and the combined armies under Pope were again defeated at the second Battle of Bull Run (Aug. 30, 1862).

425—Invasion of the North. Antietam

Stonewall Jackson hurried off with a force and captured Harpers Ferry, with immense stores and many prisoners. Lee crossed the Potomac into Maryland at a point a considerable distance north of Washington. McClellan, again

in command, hurried after him and gave battle at Antietam Creek. Each side lost about twelve thousand men but Lee was forced back over the Potomac into Virginia. Thus failed the first invasion of the North.



The bridge at Antietam

426—Battle of Fredericksburg

McClellan did not pursue Lee and the government took away his command. General Burnside replaced him and crossing the Rappahannock engaged the enemy at Fredericksburg.

The Confederates were entrenched on a hill. Their position was too strong to be taken, but Burnside ordered a charge. The Union army swept up the heights only to be torn to pieces by shot and shell. Six times the gallant "Irish Brigade," under General Meagher, rushed to the front up Marye's Heights, only to be driven back by a withering storm of shot. The Union forces lost 12,000 men and were forced back across the Rappahannock (Dec. 13).

427—Emancipation Proclamation

In the fall of 1862, Lincoln decided to take measures to free the slaves. This had been far from his intention when the war started, but circumstances changed his mind. The slaves were forced to work the farms and plantations of the South, leaving their masters free to fight at the front. To free the slaves therefore would be a severe blow to the Confederacy.

Besides, England seemed to be seriously thinking of recognizing the Confederacy as a nation. If Lincoln freed the slaves, it was not likely England would do this, as public opinion there would not permit anything being done to aid slavery. So, in September, 1862, Lincoln issued a proclamation declaring that all slaves would be free or emancipated, in any territory which, on January 1, 1863, should still be in rebellion against the government.

428—Iuka and Corinth

The final days of the year 1862 saw the Union army under Rosecrans defeat the Confederates at Iuka and Corinth, in Tennessee. The year closed with a fierce battle at Murfreesboro, Tenn., where Rosecrans and Sheridan, commanding the Union forces, defeated the Confederates under Bragg.

429—Events of Second Year of War

The principal events of the second year of the war were: The defeat of the Union army's two attempts against Richmond, under McClellan in the Peninsular campaign, and under Burnside at Fredericksburg.

The failure of Lee's invasion of the North at Antietam.

The occupation of Kentucky and Tennessee by the Union troops.

They were forced back across the river with a loss of seventeen thousand men (May 2, 1863).

433—Death of Stonewall Jackson

This terrible defeat of the North was due to the splendid leadership of Lee and Jackson. The South was to profit by the skill of Jackson no longer. He was shot, in mistake, by a detachment of his own men during this battle, and died a short time afterward.

Besides, England seemed to be recognizing the Confederacy as a freed the slaves, it was not likely this, as public opinion there would be free or emancipated, in any territory. So, in January 1, 1863, should still be in government.

428—Iuka and Corinth

The final days of the year 1862 saw the Union forces defeat the Confederates at Iuka and Corinth, Tennessee. The year closed with a battle at Fredericksburg, Tenn., where Rosecrans, commanding the Union forces, defeated the Confederates.

434—Gettysburg

Wasting no time, Lee now carried the war a second time into the north, invading Pennsylvania. The Union forces were hastily gathered together under General Meade to oppose him.

The armies met at Gettysburg, a small town in Pennsylvania, near the Maryland border. Here a valley rose to a ridge on each side. The eastern called Cemetery Ridge was occupied by the Union forces and the western, or Seminary Ridge by the Confederates. For three days the armies fought the greatest battle of the war. The advantage was slight on either side during the first two days.

435—Pickett's Charge

Finally, about mid-day of the third day, Lee decided to stake all on one great effort. For an hour his one hundred and thirty cannon rained shot and shell on the Union lines; then Pickett's Brigade, the flower of Lee's army, was ordered forward. Across the valley they charged, 17,000 strong, in a line a mile in length. Cannon shot and musket balls tore their ranks, but they never faltered. Up the sides of Cemetery Ridge and even to the breastworks of the Northerners they carried their flags.



Close quarters at Gettysburg

436—Union Victory

It was "the high tide of the Confederacy." But no human force could withstand the fire of the Union troops; torn and shattered the brave Southerners were hurled back.

Lee withdrew across the Potomac and another crisis of the Republic had been passed. Fifty thousand Americans, from North and South, were numbered among the killed, wounded, missing, and captured of this battle.

437—Operations in the West

On July 4, the day after the victory at Gettysburg, another severe blow was dealt to the Confederacy by the fall of Vicksburg. This fortress was thought capable of withstanding any attack. However, General Grant devised a

plan to take it. He crossed the Mississippi River to the west bank and marched down to a point below the fortress, fighting the Confederates five times on the way. Then the Union gunboats ran past the batteries at Vicksburg and ferried Grant across to the east side again. Again defeating a force that had come from the east to help the city, Grant commenced siege operations.



THE SIEGE OF VICKSBURG

Notice the bomb proofs in which the soldiers rest

438—Siege and Surrender

For six weeks he hammered away bombarding, and exploding mines under the Confederates. On July 4, the garrison surrendered. Then Port Hudson capitulated to General Banks, and the Mississippi River was entirely under the control of the Union.

The effect of this was very harmful to the South. It entirely cut off the vast supplies of Texas, Arkansas, and Louisiana from the Confederacy.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION XI

1. Abraham Lincoln, sixteenth President, took office March 4th, 1861. On April 12th, Fort Sumter in Charleston, S. C., harbor, was fired on by the Confederates.

2. All thought of peace was put aside, and Lincoln called for volunteers. Virginia, North Carolina, Arkansas and Tennessee joined the Confederacy. The border states remained loyal to the Union.

3. In the great struggle the North had the advantage of more men, more money and greater supplies. The South had the advantage of fighting at home, of being accustomed to arms, and, at the beginning, of being better led.

4. An invasion of the South and the capture of the Confederate Capital, Richmond, was prevented by the defeat of the Union troops at Bull Run. A blockade of Southern ports by Union Men-of-war was established (1862).

5. Gen. U. S. Grant was first heard of in the war, when his troops captured Fort Donelson in Tennessee (1862) and gained a victory at Shiloh.

6. The Union Navy, under Farragut, took New Orleans, and opened up most of the Mississippi River. The "Monitor" drove off the Confederate iron-clad "Merrimac," and saved the Union fleet in Hampton Roads.

7. In the East the Union forces under McClellan were defeated in the Peninsular Campaign. Gen. Lee the Confederate leader then invaded the North but was in turn defeated by McClellan at Antietam. The Union troops received a terrible defeat at Fredericksburg.

8. Toward the close of 1862 Lincoln issued the Emancipation Proclamation, freeing the slaves.

9. In May, 1863, Lee gave the Union army a severe beating at Chancellorsville, and then again invaded the North. A Federal army, under Gen. Meade, gave battle at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. For three days the most terrible engagement of the war was fought (July 1, 2, and 3, 1863) and then Lee retired into Virginia.

10. On the day after Gettysburg the forts at Vicksburg, which commanded the Mississippi River, surrendered to Gen. Grant. These victories marked the decisive period of the war. From that time the Union was safe.

SECTION XII

END OF WAR—RECONSTRUCTION

CHAPTER LX

LOOKOUT MOUNTAIN. EVENTS OF FOURTH YEAR

439—Operations in Center

After Murfreesboro, Bragg (Confederate) held Chattanooga until Rosecrans (Union) marched against him in the summer. Bragg left the city, but, being reinforced, gave battle on the little stream called the Chickamauga. The Confederates won a bloody battle, but would have achieved a much greater victory but for the stubborn defense of General Thomas. He commanded the left wing of the Union army and refused to give way against the fierce charges of the Confederates. For this he earned the title of the "Rock of Chickamauga." Rosecrans withdrew to Chattanooga, where he was besieged by Bragg, and his supplies were cut off. Sherman, Hooker, and Grant now hurried to Rosecrans's aid and Grant took command.

440—The Battle Above the Clouds

On November 24th Hooker's wing gave battle to the Confederates, who were entrenched on Lookout Mountain. Up the heights the Union forces charged, gaining the high ground where they were expected to stop, but did not. Up and up they swept, through a mist that had settled about the top, driving the Confederates before them in this famous "battle above the clouds." The next day Missionary

Ridge (so called from a former Catholic Indian School) was carried and Bragg was thrown back into Georgia, Sherman pursuing him.



Lookout Mountain, the Battle Above the Clouds

441—Lincoln's Gettysburg Address

A national cemetery was planned for the battlefield of Gettysburg. It was to be a resting place of the dead heroes of the war, and was dedicated on Nov. 19, 1863. On this occasion President Lincoln delivered his famous address. It closed with these words of the hope that was always so close to Lincoln's heart, "that the government of the people, for the people, and by the people, shall not perish from the earth."

442—Events of Third Year of the War

Important events of the third year of the war were:

The Emancipation Proclamation freeing the slaves;

The failure of the third attempt against Richmond, in the defeat of Hooker at Chancellorsville;

The failure of Lee's final invasion of the North, in the great battle of Gettysburg;

The defeat by Grant of the Confederates in Tennessee, after they had gained Chickamauga;

The cutting off of the western portion of the Confederacy by the capture of Mississippi River, after the fall of Vicksburg and Port Hudson.

CHAPTER LXI

THE WAR IN 1864

443—The War in 1864

There were but two large Confederate armies left. Lee commanded one in Virginia, and General J. E. Johnston, who had relieved Bragg of his army, had control of the other in Georgia. Grant was appointed Lieutenant-General in command of all the Union armies, and Sherman was placed at the head of the army of the Tennessee. It was the plan of Grant that he and Sherman should act at the same time, and so keep the Confederates from joining forces.

444—Sherman's Campaign

Let us first follow Sherman, whose object was to gain the city of Atlanta. Johnston fell back slowly before Sherman; fighting him where possible, but never risking his whole army, which he finally withdrew into Atlanta. Jefferson Davis, not satisfied with this policy of Johnston's, put General Hood in his place. Hood attacked Sherman and was defeated.

445—Atlanta Captured

Instead of laying siege to Atlanta, Sherman marched around it and cut off its supplies. Hood was forced to withdraw, and Atlanta fell into Sherman's hands and was burned. Hood marched on Tennessee hoping to entice Sherman after him. Sherman refused to follow believing General Thomas could take care of Hood. Hood besieged General

fell on the Union forces at Cedar Creek and put them to rout.

450—Sheridan's Ride

Sheridan hearing the sound of firing, mounted his horse, and set out on the thirteen mile ride from Winchester to the front. He met his fleeing troops on the way, and rallied them with the cry, "Face the other way boys; we are going back." In a short time the broken regiments were reformed and, attacking the Confederates, drove them back with great slaughter. Sheridan then proceeded to clean up the Shenandoah Valley, burning and destroying all supplies, until it came to be said "if a crow flies down the Shenandoah it must take its own provisions with it."



General Philip H. Sheridan

451—Confederate Privateers

The Confederacy was not able to build any large sea going warships. They had no shipyards nor any materials to build with. However, their government commissioned and officered several privateers. Several of these were built in England and created great havoc amongst the Union shipping, virtually driving it from the seas. England had no right to build these ships and later on was compelled to pay heavily for having done so.

452—"Alabama" and "Kearsarge"

The most famous of these ships was the "Alabama," commanded by Captain Semmes. This vessel alone did an enormous amount of damage on the Atlantic. In June, 1864, the U. S. S. "Kearsarge" met the "Alabama" in the harbor of Cherbourg, France. Semmes challenged Captain Winslow of the



Kearsarge to fight. The vessels met outside the harbor. Winslow protected the Kearsarge by hanging anchor chains over her sides, and after a fierce fight the "Alabama" was sent to the bottom.

453—Mobile

In August Admiral Farragut again led the fleet to a notable victory. He stationed himself in the rigging of

Farragut in the rigging of the "Hartford"

his flagship "Hartford" and, with a fleet of wooden ships, and some monitors, ran past the forts at Mobile and captured the city. The forts were then forced to capitulate, and the last Southern harbor was closed.

454—Events of Fourth Year

The principal results of the fourth year of the war were: Grant, while defeated at the Wilderness and suffering great loss of troops, was drawing close about Richmond. This capital still held out however and Lee still commanded a splendid army.

Sherman completed his march to the sea, burned Atlanta and took Savannah.

Hood's army was completely destroyed by Thomas.

The "Kearsarge" had sunk the "Alabama" and Farragut had taken Mobile.

In November, 1864, President Lincoln was re-elected. His opponent was General McClellan.

CHAPTER LXII**CLOSE OF THE WAR. DEATH OF LINCOLN****455—The War in 1865**

The South was nearly exhausted now, and the end was approaching. Sherman started north with his magnificent army of veterans, and once more defeated Johnston, who tried to block his way. Lee's only chance lay in effecting a junction with Johnston, but Sheridan put an end to this hope by his victory at Five Forks. The Confederates abandoned Petersburg, and their government fled from Richmond. Grant occupied these cities and drove Lee westward.

456—Appomattox. Lee's Surrender

Sheridan planted his troops across the Confederates' front, and then Lee saw the hopelessness of his position. On April 9, at Appomattox Court House, he surrendered his army to General Grant. The Southerners were starving, and twenty-five thousand Union rations were issued to them.

The terms of surrender were very mild. Grant permitted his old enemies to keep their horses—"They will need them for the spring plowing," he said.

Two weeks later Johnston surrendered to Sherman, and, on May 10th, Jefferson Davis was captured in Georgia. The Civil War was over, and great was the rejoicing throughout the North.

457—Effects

The loss of the war in treasure and in lives was enormous. Three quarters of a million men were killed and at the end the Union owed three billion dollars. The South also owed a tremendous sum, which was never paid.

But two glorious results had been effected by this sacrifice. Slavery was forever abolished, and the Union of the States made permanent for all time. And this result has been accomplished not alone in law, but in men's hearts as well, for to-day there is no more loyal section of the Union than the states of the old Confederacy.

458—Death of Lincoln

The great man who had, with such foresight and perseverance, piloted the Union through its years of stress, was destined to be one of the last to lay down his life in its behalf. On April 14, the President attended Ford's theatre in Washington, occupying a box. An assassin entered the box behind him and shot him through the head. The murderer leaped upon the stage shouting "*Sic semper tyrannis*" (Thus always to tyrants). As he did so his spur caught in an American flag and he fell, breaking his leg. He managed to mount his horse and escape but was tracked and shot down in a barn.

The assassin was an actor named John Wilkes Booth, and was one of a band of conspirators who also attempted

to kill Secretary Seward. President Lincoln never regained consciousness and died the following morning.

459—Catholics in the Civil War

Catholic men and women played a patriotic and honorable part in the Civil War. General Sheridan was only better known than were Rosecrans, Kearney, Meagher and a host of other Catholic officers; and the number of Catholics in the ranks was legion. No troops behaved with greater bravery than the famous "Irish Brigade"; and whether on battlefield or in hospital, all, Protestant and Catholic alike, testified to the unselfish courage and patriotic devotion of the Catholic nuns.

CHAPTER LXIII

ANDREW JOHNSON, SEVENTEENTH PRESIDENT

460—Johnson's Administration (1865-69)

Upon the death of President Lincoln, Andrew Johnson, the Vice President, at once became President. Under him the work of reconstruction in the South commenced. The South was in a pitiable condition after the war. Her bravest sons had given up their lives, her lands had been devastated, and her people were plunged into debt. Railroads were destroyed, and even the mail service had been abandoned. There was no government, and the one man in the North who could help most had been assassinated. The new President, Johnson, did not have the



Andrew Johnson

influence over Congress that Lincoln had; his plans for reconstruction were set aside by that body, and long years of trouble for the South ensued.

461—Thirteenth Amendment

This amendment was put before the states early in 1865, and was ratified in the latter part of that year. In order to get the necessary number of states to ratify the amendment, Nevada was admitted to the Union, in 1864. The Thirteenth Amendment abolished slavery throughout the country. The Emancipation Proclamation was simply a war measure, issued by the President as Commander-in-Chief of the army. It freed slaves only in the territory controlled by the Confederacy. The Thirteenth Amendment legalized the Emancipation Proclamation, and freed the slaves throughout all the rest of the land.

462—President and Congress

When Congress convened, it decided against the Reconstruction ideas of President Johnson. It was not willing, as Johnson was, to trust the Southern leaders to treat the negroes fairly. So several laws were passed giving the negro rights as citizens. These laws were then embodied in another amendment to the Constitution.

463—The Fourteenth Amendment

This Amendment gave the negro rights of citizenship, and cut down the representation in Congress of any state refusing him the right to vote.

464—Fifteenth Amendment

A few years later the Fifteenth Amendment granted to all the right to vote without regard to "race, creed, color, or previous condition of servitude." This settled finally the right of the negro to vote.

465—Ironclad Oath. Carpet Baggers

The best citizens of the South were disqualified from voting by the oath required by Congress. This "ironclad oath," so called, could be taken only by those who had not participated in the war in any way. And these were very few indeed. Many unprincipled men from the North, called "carpet baggers,"* got themselves elected to office, with the help of the ignorant negroes. Many of these politicians despoiled the South, and added much to the misery of that unhappy section.

466—Congress Passes New Laws

A bitter struggle between President Johnson and Congress soon developed. Congress passed laws over the veto of the President. The President removed Secretary of War Stanton, whom he cordially disliked. Congress claimed it was against the law to do this, without the consent of the Senate. The President refused to restore Stanton.

467—Impeachment

So Congress impeached the President. He was brought before the Senate charged with "high crimes and misdemeanors." Had he been found guilty, he would have been removed from office. After a trial of two months Johnson was acquitted by a majority of one vote (May, 1868).

468—Full Pardon

On Christmas Day, 1868, full pardon and amnesty was granted to all those who had taken part in the war.

469—Mexico and Maximilian

While the states of the Union were at war, England,

*Because most of them went to the South with but little more than a carpet-bagful of clothes.

France, and Spain sent troops to Mexico to collect debts due from that country. England and Spain withdrew, but the Emperor Napoleon III, of France, contrived to make the Archduke Maximillian of Austria, Emperor of Mexico. When the Civil War was over, the United States protested that this foreign interference was contrary to the Monroe Doctrine. We demanded the withdrawal of the French soldiers, by whose aid Maximillian had gained the throne. Upon their withdrawal the Mexicans captured and shot the unfortunate Maximillian (June, 1867).



7' ALASKA NOT ALL SNOW AND ICE

A potato field in that country

470—Alaska

During the time of Reconstruction the country advanced much in population, wealth, and manufactures. A large territorial expansion was also made. In 1867, the peninsula of Alaska was purchased from the Russian government.

The price was \$7,200,000 for this region which is three times as large as France. It was at that time valued most for its furs and fisheries. In 1897, however, gold was discovered, and a rush of miners ensued. Coal has also been discovered in quantities, and the Territory of Alaska is now a valuable part of the country.

Nebraska became a state in 1867.



The Great Eastern laying the Atlantic Cable

471—Atlantic Cable

The telegraph had worked such wonders on land that people long desired to stretch a cable under the ocean. Cyrus Field, of New York, was the leader of this project.

* It is said that the wonderful resources of this country were first brought to the attention of Secretary Seward, in 1860, by a Jesuit priest who had labored in Alaska.

A cable was actually completed in 1858, and messages were sent, but the cable soon broke. Field kept at his project and another cable was laid in 1865, but it, too, parted in mid-ocean. Then the "Great Eastern," which until recent years was the largest ship ever built, succeeded in laying a cable which worked. Later it was found possible to pick up and splice the ends of the old cable. Since then many cables have been laid connecting all parts of the world by wire. In 1903, a line was completed from San Francisco to the Philippines, and a message sent around the world in twelve minutes.

CHAPTER LXIV

ULYSSES S. GRANT, EIGHTEENTH PRESIDENT

472—Grant's Administration (1869-77)

General U. S. Grant was nominated for President by the Republicans, in 1867, and carried the election.

During the decade from 1860-70, while the Civil War was being fought, the population of the country increased seven millions. In 1870 it was over thirty-eight millions in all.

The value of manufacturing establishments almost doubled during the same time.

It is well to remember that while the South was cut off from the outside world by the Union Army and Navy, the North continued to increase in population and wealth, much as if no war were in progress.

473—Pacific Railroad

For years a railroad had been building, which was to cross the Great Plains and Rocky Mountains and connect the Pacific Coast with the rest of the Union. The Union Pacific Railroad was completed during the first year of Grant's

administration. The line had been building from east and west, and the two divisions finally met at a point in Nevada, where a golden spike was driven to complete the road.



Modern railroad building in the West

474—Fires

A great fire raged for two days in the city of Chicago, in 1871. One hundred thousand people were made homeless, and tremendous damage to property was done. The following year a very disastrous fire took place in Boston.

475—"Alabama" Claims

The damage done by the Confederate privateer "Alabama," and other privateers, was suffered by private owners who made claims upon the British government for their

losses. They argued that as the ships had been built and manned in England, that government was responsible for their acts. England refused to entertain their claims.

476—Arbitration. Grant Reelected

President Grant made the matter a national one by requesting Congress to pass a bill enabling him to pay those who had suffered. England, seeing she would have to deal with the government instead of individuals, agreed to arbitrate the matter. A commission sitting at Geneva gave the United States \$15,500,000 damages. Thus what might have been a cause of war was peacefully settled by arbitration.

In 1872, General Grant was elected President for a second term.

477—Panic of 1873

A great wave of speculation swept over the country after the Civil War. Many railroads were built, and enterprises were started all over the country. The failure of a well known banking firm brought on a financial panic, in 1873. For six years the business depression lasted. Money was scarce, employment was hard to obtain and much hardship ensued.

478—First American Cardinal

In 1875, His Holiness, Pope Pius IX, appointed Archbishop McClosky, of New York, the first American Cardinal.

479—Centennial of 1876

Notwithstanding the hard times the one hundredth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence was splendidly celebrated, in 1876, by an international exhibition, held in Fairmount Park, Philadelphia. Large and beautiful build-

ings were built and products of all the states and of many nations were exhibited.

480—Custer Massacre

Trouble with the Indians was more or less continuous during the twelve years, following 1865. This was largely the fault of the white man. In the words of General Grant's Commission, which was appointed to look into the trouble: "The history of the government's connections with the Indians is a shameful record of broken treaties and unfulfilled promises."

During 1876, General Custer, and a detachment of his troops, were cut off by a band of Sioux Indians, led by the chief Sitting Bull, and massacred to the last man.

481—The Telephone. Colorado Admitted

During the Centennial Exposition a curious instrument was shown for the first time in public. By means of it the



The telephone from coast to coast

human voice was carried over a wire. This "telephone" had been invented, in 1875, by Alexander Graham Bell, but even at the Exposition many learned men ridiculed it and called it a toy. To-day it is possible to talk on the telephone from New York to San Francisco, and millions of the instruments add to our home convenience and business advantage.

Colorado, admitted in 1876, is called the "Centennial State."

CHAPTER LXV

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, NINETEENTH PRESIDENT

482—Electoral Troubles

The Democratic nominee for President, in 1876, was Samuel J. Tilden, of New York. The Republicans nominated Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio. After the election it was found that if the votes of the three Southern states, Louisiana, South Carolina, and Florida, were counted for Tilden, he would win. He seemed to have carried these states by a large majority. The Republicans claimed, however, that the elections in these states had been unfairly held.

483—Electoral Commission

Excitement ran high, and matters looked serious. The dispute, however, was finally laid before an Electoral Commission, composed of five Senators, five Congressmen, and five Judges of the Supreme Court. Eight of these men were Republicans and seven Democrats. By a strictly party vote they declared Hayes elected.

484—Hayes's Administration (1877-81)

Hayes took office, in 1877, and soon after withdrew the

United States troops from the South. The "carpet baggers" and their corrupt governments were then soon ousted, and the people took hold of their own affairs. A much better feeling grew up between the sections.

485—Railroad Riots

During the summer of 1877, a strike for higher wages, was called on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad. The strikers attempted to stop the trains from running, and much rioting followed. State militia and even United States regular troops were called to quell the trouble. In Chicago, and Pittsburgh, and in the mining regions, many were killed and wounded; the regular troops finally restored order. Though millions were lost in property and wages, the strike was not successful.

486—Yellow Fever in South

A scourge of yellow fever broke out in the South, during 1878 and 1879. Hundreds of people died and in some places business was entirely halted. The North responded nobly to the appeal for money and necessities and sent volunteers for nursing. This kindly sympathy added to the feeling of re-union which was growing stronger between the sections.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION XII

1. In 1864, Gen. W. T. Sherman, captured Atlanta, Georgia, and then moved along a broad path to the sea-coast, capturing Savannah. The country through which the army moved was swept bare of supplies, and everything useful to the enemy was destroyed.

2. Gen. Lee was opposed by Gen. Grant, who had been placed in command of all the Union forces. A series of bloody battles took place at the Wilderness, Spottsylvania Court House, and Cold Harbor while Grant steadily forced his way toward Richmond. Lee sought to draw off Grant by threatening Washington, but the Confederates were badly beaten, in the Shenandoah Valley, by Gen. Philip Sheridan.

3. During 1864, the "Alabama," a Confederate privateer built in England, and which had done great damage to Union shipping, was sunk by the U. S. S. "Kearsarge." Admiral Farragut and a fleet of ships captured Mobile, the last open port in the South.

4. In 1865, Lee made a futile effort to join Johnston. Grant barred the way and Lee was forced to surrender at Appomattox Court House, April 19, 1865. The other Confederate forces followed and the war was over.

5. The tremendous sacrifices of the Civil War brought about two great results: slavery was abolished; and the Union of the States was made permanent.

6. Abraham Lincoln was shot by an assassin, while attending a theatre on the night of April 14, 1865. He died the following day and was succeeded by Andrew Johnson, the seventeenth President.

7. The years following the war were full of trouble for the Southern States. The Thirteenth, Fourteenth, and Fifteenth Amendments to the Constitution were adopted, giving the rights of citizenship to the former slaves. Politicians from the North gained control in many places, while the best people were not allowed to vote, because they had taken part in the war.

8. Congress and President Johnson were in continual dispute over the reconstruction of the South and the President was finally Impeached. Upon trial he was acquitted by one vote.

9. Gen. Ulysses S. Grant became the eighteenth President, in 1869. During his term a railroad across the continent to the Pacific Coast, was completed. Claims against England growing out of the damage done by the "Alabama" were arbitrated. Archbishop McClosky of New York was appointed the first American Cardinal. One hundred years of American independence was celebrated by an Exposition at Philadelphia.

10. Rutherford B. Hayes was elected nineteenth President, after a contest with Samuel J. Tilden, which was finally decided by an Electoral Commission. Hayes withdrew the last troops from the South and a better feeling grew up between the sections.

BIOGRAPHIES

BIOGRAPHIES

Lincoln

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, our great war President, and one of the noblest figures in human history, was born in Hardin County, Ky., on February 12, 1809. His family moved to Illinois and there Lincoln began the practice of law, after a bitter struggle with poverty and lack of school education. Elected President, in 1860, by the Republican party, the party then opposed to slavery, eleven slave holding States withdrew from the Union and formed the Confederate States of America. A Civil War of great severity followed lasting from 1861 to 1865. During this most trying period of our history Lincoln guided the nation with marvelous skill and wisdom. He freed the slaves and at the close of the war had taken steps toward bringing the seceded states back into the Union. The pistol of an assassin cut short his life—a life invaluable to his country and his time. He was shot in Ford's Theatre, Washington, in April 1865 by John Wilkes Booth. The assassin was cornered in a barn and shot.

Grant

ULYSSES SIMPSON GRANT was born at Point Pleasant, Ohio, April 27, 1822. When our Civil War began, he was employed in his brother's tanyard in Galena, Illinois. But he was a graduate of West Point Military Academy and had served with credit in our army through the Mexican War. After taking command of an Illinois regiment he rose rapidly in rank. Fort Donelson, Pittsburg Landing, Corinth, Lookout Mountain, Vicksburg—these are the names of

victories he won. On March 12, 1864, he took command of the army of the Potomac, and in a little over a year he had compelled the surrender of the Confederate army opposed to him. After two terms as President—1869–1877—he made a tour of the world and everywhere was received with high honors. He died at Mt. McGregor, New York, in 1885. His remains, inclosed in a stone coffin, repose in a magnificent mausoleum in New York City on the east bank of the Hudson River.

Sherman

WILLIAM TECUMSEH SHERMAN, an eminent Union General of our Civil War, was born in Lancaster, Ohio, February 8, 1820. Graduating from West Point, he entered the army but later on resigned. At the opening of the Civil War he was principal of a military academy in Louisiana and was offered many inducements to favor the Confederate cause. But he remained loyal to the Stars and Stripes, was commissioned colonel of the Thirteenth Infantry, and soon afterward was made brigadier general. He quickly won a high reputation for courage and military skill in battle. His famous march from Atlanta, Georgia, to the sea—a march the most remarkable so large an army ever undertook—gave the death stroke to the Confederacy south of the line held by Grant's army. After capturing Savannah, he turned northward and, on April 26, 1865, forced the last Confederate army to surrender in North Carolina.

In March, 1869, he succeeded Grant as General-in-chief of the armies of the United States. He died in New York on February 14, 1891, having become a Catholic shortly before. One of his sons joined the Society of Jesus and became a priest.

Sheridan

PHILIP HENRY SHERIDAN was one of the most distin-

guished officers of the Union Army in the Civil War. He was born in Albany, New York, March 6, 1813, a Catholic, of Irish descent. After being graduated from West Point, he received a commission in the regular army. For success in battle he was made brigadier general and when Grant took command of the Army of the Potomac, he made Sheridan commander of cavalry. The latter promptly drove the Confederates out of the Shenandoah Valley. Some years after the war closed, he was raised by Congress to the highest military rank—general of the army, an office held before him only by Grant and Sherman. He died in 1888.

Meagher

THOMAS FRANCIS MEAGHER, the general commanding the famous Irish Brigade during our Civil War was born in Waterford, Ireland, August 3, 1823. Educated in the Jesuit college of Stoneyhurst, he joined the Young Ireland party—the party that wanted to free Ireland by force—and was arrested by the English government, and transported to Van Dieman's Land. Escaping he came to the United States in 1852. When war broke out, in 1861, he promptly took the Union side. In one of the great battles of the war, Chancellorsville, the key of the Confederate's position was a hill whose top was fortified by a stone wall. Behind the wall were strong divisions of Confederate soldiers. We know now that it was impossible to storm it, but the Irish Brigade was ordered to attempt the hopeless task. With Meagher at their head those heroic sons of Ireland pressed on to death, with the courage of a race that has won glory on a thousand battle fields. The Brigade was nearly annihilated, the last man that fell being only 17 yards from the muzzles of the Confederate cannon. In 1867, Meagher, then acting governor of Montana territory, accidentally fell from the deck of a steamboat on the Mission River and was drowned. His death was deeply lamented.

SECTION XIII

COMPLETE REUNION. INDUSTRIAL AND TERRITORIAL EXPANSION

CHAPTER LXVI

JAMES A. GARFIELD, TWENTIETH PRESIDENT CHESTER A. ARTHUR, TWENTY-FIRST PRESIDENT

487—Garfield's Administration (1879)

The presidential contest, in 1880, was between two civil war heroes—General James A. Garfield, Republican, and General Winfield Scott Hancock, Democrat. Garfield was elected, but the contest was bitter and exciting.

Four months after taking office, the President was shot. A disappointed office seeker, named Charles J. Guiteau was the cowardly assassin.



James A. Garfield

488—Death of Garfield

President Garfield lay between life and death for nearly three months, while the whole nation prayed for his recovery. On the 19th of September he passed away mourned by all.

Vice President Chester Alan Arthur, of New York, was sworn in as President (1879–83).

489—Chinese Exclusion

The American laboring man demanded protection from cheap foreign competition. Chinese laborers, who are willing to live on a few cents a day, were coming into this country in great numbers. They worked for small pay and took the jobs of American laborers. A law was passed, in 1882, prohibiting Chinese entering this country for a period of ten years. This has been continued to the present time.



Chester A. Arthur

490—Alien Contract Labor

Another scheme to get cheap labor was for employers to make contracts in Europe with men to come to this country and work for low wages. This practice was stopped by the Alien Contract Labor Law, of 1885.

491—Civil Service Reform

When the government was first organized, men in its employ held office under succeeding Presidents. President Jackson however inaugurated the system of "rotation in office." Under this system each President appointed his own friends and political supporters to office. The system had grown to evil proportions, and, during Arthur's administration, a bill was passed which was the beginning of civil service reform. This aimed to limit appointments to those who had passed an examination of fitness, and then prohibited their dismissal except for cause. This law has been added to and improved until now there are over 200,000 government employees under civil service restrictions.

492—Democratic Victory 1884

After a lapse of a quarter of a century the Democrats again elected a President. Grover Cleveland, of New York, defeated James G. Blaine, of Maine. This victory of the Democrats, who had been identified with the South during the War, showed that all sectional feeling had passed away.

CHAPTER LXVII

GROVER CLEVELAND, TWENTY-SECOND
PRESIDENT

493—Cleveland's Administration (1885-89)

Important Laws were passed during Cleveland's term, among them the Presidential Succession Law. Under the old law, in case both the President and Vice President died, there might have been no one to fill the office. Now a regular order of succession among the officers of the cabinet was established.



Grover Cleveland

494—Electoral Count Law

In order that there might never be a repetition of the Hayes-Tilden election dispute, an "Electoral Count" Law was passed. Under this law disputed votes of states are to be admitted when both houses of Congress agree on them. If the Senate and House can not agree, then the matter is to be left to the Governor of the state whose votes are in dispute.

495—Interstate Commerce Law

Congress also passed a law creating an Interstate Commerce Commission. This body was given power to regulate the freight and passenger rates charged by railroads doing business between (inter) the states. In addition it became unlawful for the railroads to give "rebates," or cheaper rates to favored customers. These secret rebates had been the means by which large and greedy corporations crushed their smaller rivals.

496—The Tariff

Cleveland believed the tariff should be cut down on most articles and taken off raw materials entirely. There was too much revenue coming in from customs duties, which had been put on when much money was needed to carry on the Civil War. The Republicans opposed cutting down the tariff. They claimed that cheap European goods would flood this country and that the wages of American laboring men would have to be cut down to meet their competition. A very general discussion ensued throughout the country, and, in the election of 1888, Cleveland was defeated for re-election by Benjamin Harrison of Indiana.

CHAPTER LXVIII**BENJAMIN HARRISON, TWENTY-THIRD
PRESIDENT****497—Harrison's Administration (1889-93)**

George Washington was inaugurated first President of the United States, in New York, in the year 1789. Grover Cleveland's first administration, which ended in 1889, marked the completion of one hundred years of government of the Republic. This event was celebrated by a three days' festivity

in New York City. Six millions of people witnessed the military, civic, and naval parades, and the whole country rejoiced in the anniversary.

498—A Century's Progress

There was much cause for joy. The little strip of seaboard territory of a century before, had extended out across the continent to the Pacific Ocean; five millions of people had increased to sixty-five millions; a second war of Independence had been successfully fought, in 1812. A war with Mexico, which resulted in large territorial expansion, had been won without the loss of a battle; the terrible Civil War with its fratricidal hate and bloodshed, had come and gone; and the country was united again more firmly than ever before. Religion, wealth, education and happiness had everywhere progressed, and the struggling little republic had become a giant among the nations. Catholic Americans, too, had cause to rejoice at the progress of their religion during that time.



Benjamin Harrison

499—Oklahoma

Forty thousand square miles of territory, which had been bought from the Indians, was thrown open to settlement in April 1889. This region had formerly been a part of Indian Territory. A frantic rush of settlers soon filled every homestead in this rich country. The city of Guthrie was founded and by nightfall had a population of 10,000 people.

500—New States

The great West was rapidly filling up. Farms and ranches increased in number. Villages and cities were established and mines were opened up. All this was accomplished by a great increase in population, particularly in the Northwest. During Harrison's administration six new states were admitted. North Dakota, South Dakota, Montana, and Washington, in 1889; and Idaho and Wyoming, in 1890.

501—Disappearance of the Frontier

Until the year 1890, at each census, it was possible to trace on the map a line which marked the frontier, or western limits of settlement. Now this was no longer possible. While there yet remained large tracts of land without inhabitants, yet population was so well distributed that frontier lines had entirely disappeared.

502—The McKinley Bill

As the Republicans had been elected on a "Protection" plank, they enacted a Tariff legislation, which raised the duty on many articles. It was called the McKinley Bill, taking its name from its author. Under it, and subsequent bills passed by the Republicans, the industries and manufactures grew to great proportions. These bills led to the formation of the great "Trusts" which we shall hear about.

CHAPTER LXIX**GROVER CLEVELAND, TWENTY-FOURTH
PRESIDENT****503—Cleveland's Second Term (1893-97)**

For a third time, in 1892, Grover Cleveland was the Democratic nominee for President. The Republicans were

led by Harrison. A new party called the Peoples Party, or "Populists," sprang up and carried six of the Western States. Cleveland was elected by a large majority (1893-97).

504—Columbian Exposition

During the year 1893 a World's Exposition was held in Chicago to celebrate the four hundredth anniversary of the Discovery of America, in 1492. The "White City," as it was called, was built on the shores of Lake Michigan, and to it the nations of the world sent their finest products of art and manufacture. Princess Eulalie of Spain visited it, and was received with great enthusiasm throughout the country. Reproductions of the "Santa Maria" and the other ships of Columbus were built in Spain and crossed the Atlantic to this country.



A scene in Hawaii

505—Hawaii

A revolution led by Americans and aided by the American Minister, had overthrown the government of Queen Liliuokalani of the Hawaiian Islands, in the Pacific Ocean. A provisional government sent a "Treaty of Annexation" to the United States Government. President Cleveland would have none of this high handed procedure and withdrew the treaty from the Senate. Hawaii then became a republic, but in 1898, it was annexed to this country. The islands are well situated for commerce, particularly since the opening of the Panama Canal. They are in the direct trade routes of vessels and are therefore valuable possessions.

506—Panic of 1893

Financial affairs had become unsettled by the workings of the Sherman Silver Bill. This bill, passed during Harrison's term, compelled the Secretary of the Treasury to buy a large amount of silver each month and to pay for it in treasury notes (paper money). The holders of these notes could go to the Treasury and get gold for them. In our country gold and silver money were supposed to be of equal value, but in other parts of the world gold was worth more. So many people got gold from the Treasury, in exchange for their paper money, and sold it for higher prices in foreign countries, or else hid it away for emergencies.

507—Repeal of Sherman Bill

President Cleveland sent a message to Congress asking the repeal of the silver purchase clause of the Sherman Bill. Before Congress passed the bill a great panic came over the country. Banks failed, manufacturing stopped, and money seemed almost to disappear. But the Sherman Bill was repealed and things very slowly became settled again, several years passing before business became normal.

tra session of Congress which framed the Dingley Tariff Bill. This practically put the high tariff McKinley Bill in force again and American protected industries became very prosperous.

515—Spain and Cuba

Affairs in Cuba had been in a turmoil for years. Cubans were dissatisfied with Spanish rule, and an insurrection or revolution broke out. It dragged along for years with much cruelty and bloodshed, and finally Spain sent General Weyler to suppress it. He attempted to do this by ordering the inhabitants of the rebellious regions into great "concentration camps," where they could be kept under his eye. No provisions for health were made in these camps, and the suffering was great. American opinion, which had been favorable to the Cubans for many years, became intensely excited at this suffering so near our shores.



© International Newsreel Co.

The wreck of the U. S. S. "Maine"

516—The “Maine”

The battleship “Maine” was sent on a visit to Havana and was assigned to a particular anchorage in the harbor, by the Spanish authorities. On Feb. 14, 1898, the “Maine” was blown up and wrecked, two hundred and sixty of her crew being killed. It was found that the explosion came from the outside but it could not be proved that the Spaniards caused it.

The whole Cuban question became more acute than ever and indignation ran high in America. President McKinley made demands on Spain to correct conditions, but a satisfactory answer was not given.

CHAPTER LXII
WAR WITH SPAIN

517—War

On April 18, 1898, Congress declared Cuba to be free and



George Dewey

independent; and, on April 25, war against Spain was declared. The American government pledged itself not to annex or control the island, promising to withdraw when its liberation had been effected.

518—Dewey's Victory at Manila

The war was short and entirely in favor of the United States. Commodore Dewey, commanding the American Asiatic

fleet, left Hong Kong and reached the Harbor of Manila, Philippine Islands, on May 1. Stealing past the outer defences of the harbor during the night, and ignoring the torpedoes which were supposed to be planted in his path, he came upon the Spanish fleet before the city. At the end of a short battle the Spaniards were entirely destroyed, without any American loss. Congress thanked Dewey and made him Admiral of the Navy.

519—Spanish Cruisers

Four fine armored cruisers set out from Spain and crossed the Atlantic. For a long time they could not be located, and much apprehension was caused in cities along the Atlantic coast. The American Atlantic fleet, under Sampson and Schley, finally located the ships in Santiago harbor, Cuba, and blockaded them there.

520—Battle of Santiago

On July 3rd, the Spaniards, under Admiral Cervera, made a dash for escape from the harbor. Within four hours their vessels were a series of wrecks strewn along the coast. They had been smashed and forced ashore by the big guns of the American fleet. Six hundred Spaniards were killed and seventeen hundred, including Admiral Cervera, taken prisoners.

521—San Juan Hill

In the meantime an army under General Shafter landed near Santiago and in a brilliant action captured the San Juan and other hills overlooking the city. Non-combatants were allowed to leave, and then a bombardment of the city commenced. On July 17, Santiago and all the eastern part of the island were in the hands of the Americans. General Miles captured Porto Rico with but little trouble; land

forces, which had been sent to Admiral Dewey's aid, captured Manila, and the surrounding region.

522—Treaty of Peace

Spain now sued for peace. Cuba was given her independence. The United States became possessed of all the Philippine Islands and Guam, in the Pacific Ocean, and Porto Rico, in the Atlantic.

523—Effects

The principal effects of the Spanish war were: The ending of all ill-feeling between the North and South. Old Southern soldiers were given high command in the Union armies and the whole country rallied to the flag. Another effect was to make the United States a world power. There was no such intention at the beginning of the war, but Dewey's victory at Manila, and the collapse of Spanish colonial power forced this country to take up the work of dominion. The war marked the end of Spain as a world power. Her colonial possessions, which had once been the greatest in the world, were now lost to her.

524—War in Philippines

The natives of these islands expected the Americans to withdraw as soon as the Spanish were expelled. When they did not do so, the Filipinos set up a government of their own, with their leader, Emilio Aguinaldo, as President. In the winter of 1899, a war broke out between the Filipinos and the Americans which lasted for three years and caused much serious fighting in the wild and unsettled parts of the islands. The natives were finally pacified.

525—McKinley Re-elected

McKinley was re-elected over Bryan, in 1900. The silver

question was again debated, but the prosperity of the country was so great that the people desired McKinley to continue.

526—Trusts

During these years of prosperity and growth under the high tariff, the practice of "combining" different businesses, or manufacturing plants, had grown to great proportions. It was very profitable to do away with competition and to save expenses by joining rival concerns into one company. Thus in the steel industry there came to be a great company which controlled all the wire mills, and another which made most of the steel for building, and one which accounted for all the sheet steel.

527—United States Steel Corporation

Finally all these iron and steel companies were combined into one great company called the United States Steel Corporation. In Sugar, in Oil, in Tobacco, and in many other products large corporations also gained control. Many people became alarmed at the growing power of these great companies, or "Trusts," and their regulation and control has been a vital question from McKinley's day to the present time.

528—Pan-American Exposition

During 1901, the beautiful Pan-American Exposition was opened at Buffalo, New York. "Pan" is a Greek word meaning "all," and the purpose of this All-American exposition was to exhibit the products of the three sections of our Continent—North, Central, and South America—and to bring these sections closer together in business and friendship.

CHAPTER LXXII

**THEODORE ROOSEVELT, TWENTY-SIXTH
PRESIDENT****529—Assassination of McKinley. Theodore Roosevelt
becomes President (1901-09)**

During September, 1901, President McKinley attended the Exposition and held a public reception. An anarchist

named Czolgotz, concealing a revolver in his handkerchief, shot the President. The wound was not immediately fatal but on Sept. 14, 1901, the President passed away. The Vice President Theodore Roosevelt of New York, immediately took the oath of office as President.



Roosevelt, Rough Rider

530—Panama Canal

From the time of its discovery it had been the ambition of men to cut a passage across the Isthmus of Panama. The Spanish War brought up the matter very forcibly. The battleship "Oregon" was on the Pacific coast, when the war broke out. To reach the rest of the fleet, on the Atlantic, she was forced to sail all around South America and to make the passage through the dangerous Straits of Magellan. This she did in gallant style, but the advantage of having a shorter route across Panama became very evident. It would be of importance not only from a naval but a commercial point of view. The saving in ocean freight charges would be very large.

531—Goethals Finishes Canal

A French Company had started to build a canal but the work had been stopped. The American government bought the French Company's rights and leased a strip of land crossing the Isthmus from the Republic of Panama.



The Panama Canal

Lieut. Colonel (later Major General) George W. Goethals was entrusted, in 1907, with the engineering work of building this great waterway. The difficulties were enormous. The great ditch had to be dug in one place through a small mountain. But all difficulties were overcome and the canal was opened to traffic, in 1914.

532—Roosevelt Re-elected

President Roosevelt was re-elected, in 1904, over Alton B. Parker, of New York, the Democratic nominee

533—Anti-Trust Law

The great combinations of business, in the form of "Trusts" on one side, and of working men in the "Labor Unions" on the other, caused a demand that the government should regulate both. A bill called the Sherman Anti-Trust Law had been passed sometime before. It made combinations of business which would restrain trade unlawful. President Roosevelt now invoked the Sherman Anti-Trust Law and brought it to bear on several monopolies, which the Supreme Court dissolved.

534—Fairer Business Methods

A general house cleaning of business methods was inaugurated, which has done much to raise the standards of honesty in business dealings. Laws were passed to further this improvement in business morals. The Railway Rate, Meat Inspection, and Pure Food Laws, all have this intent.

535—Celebrations

Three anniversaries of important historical events were celebrated during Roosevelt's administration. In 1904, was celebrated the one hundredth anniversary of the Louisiana Purchase, 1803. A great World's Fair was held in the city of St. Louis, the most important city embraced in what was the Louisiana Territory.

536—Lewis and Clark, and Jamestown Expositions

In 1905, a Fair was held at Portland, Oregon, to commemorate the one hundredth anniversary of the Lewis and Clark Expedition. The great wilderness they explored had grown, in one hundred years, to be an important section of the Union.

In 1907, a Fair was held at Norfolk, Va., to celebrate the three hundredth anniversary of the first English settlement at Jamestown (1607).

537—San Francisco Earthquake and Fire

On April 18th, 1906, a violent earthquake shook the City of San Francisco and the surrounding country. Many people were killed by falling buildings and, to make matters worse, the city water pipes were broken in the ground. Fire broke out and, no water being obtainable, destroyed



The St. Louis Fair

a large part of the city. The loss was very great, and famine was prevented only by prompt aid from the Government and the country at large. The city was soon rebuilt in more substantial shape than ever, and, in 1915, the Panama-Pacific Exposition, celebrating the opening of the Panama Canal, was held within its limits.

538—Panic of 1907

The failure of a New York trust company brought on a severe money panic, in 1907. Its effects were a long time in being overcome by the business world.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION XIII

1. James A. Garfield, the twentieth President, was killed by an assassin shortly after taking office, Chester Allen Arthur became the twenty-first President. American labor was protected by laws prohibiting emigration of Chinese and the bringing in of cheap European contract labor.

2. Grover Cleveland, twenty-second President, was the first Democrat elected since before the Civil War. Laws were passed regulating the railroads doing business between states (inter-state). The tariff was reduced.

3. Benjamin Harrison became twenty-third President. Harrison raised the tariff by the "McKinley Bill." Six new states were admitted and Oklahoma Territory thrown open to settlement.

4. Grover Cleveland was again elected, becoming the twenty-fourth President. The Sherman Silver Bill created a financial panic. Cleveland re-affirmed the Monroe Doctrine by a sharp message to England concerning Venezuela.

5. William McKinley became twenty-fifth President, at the time of a revolution in Cuba. Great excitement was caused by the blowing up of the U. S. S. "Maine."

6. War was declared against Spain. Commodore Dewey destroyed the Spanish fleet in Manila, Philippine Islands. A Spanish squadron was sunk off Santiago, Cuba, and that city surrendered. Porto Rico was taken without trouble. Spain sued for peace, giving the Philippines and Porto Rico to the United States and making Cuba free.

7. Large combinations of business companies known as "Trusts" began to be formed after the Spanish War. To control them has been the object of many laws.

8. McKinley was shot while attending the Pan (all)-American Exposition at Buffalo, and Theodore Roosevelt became the twenty-sixth President (1901).

9. Difficulty had been met with in building a Canal across Panama. During Roosevelt's term the rights of a French Company were bought, and the work entrusted to Col. Goethals. In spite of greatest difficulties the canal was opened in 1914.

10. In 1906 an earthquake, followed by a fire, destroyed the larger part of San Francisco.

SECTION XIV

THE WORLD WAR

CHAPTER LXXIII

WILLIAM H. TAFT, TWENTY-SEVENTH PRESIDENT

539—Taft's Administration (1909-13)

In 1908, William H. Taft, of Ohio, was elected President over Wm. J. Bryan, of Nebraska, who was thus defeated for a third time. He was an unsuccessful candidate against McKinley, in 1896 and in 1900.

540—Business Affairs

During Taft's term the prosecution of illegal business combinations continued. Several large manufacturing and railroad "Trusts" were broken up.

541—Catholic Chief Justice

The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court died and, in 1910 President Taft appointed Edward D. White, of Louisiana, to fill the vacancy. Chief Justice White is a Catholic and an ex-Confederate. That he was appointed to this high office shows to what an extent religious and sectional feeling has died out in our country.

542—New States

New Mexico and Arizona were admitted to the Union, in 1911, making forty-eight states in all. Although they were



The United States Supreme Court

late in reaching statehood, these states are among the oldest sections in point of settlement. Santa Fé, New Mexico, is the second oldest city in the country.

These states are part of the territory ceded to the United States after the Mexican War.

543—New Cardinals

Pope Piux X, in 1911, recognized the importance of the Catholic Church in America by appointing three American Cardinals. Mgr. Falconio, Apostolic Delegate at Washington, who was an American citizen; John Farley, Archbishop of New York; and William O'Connell, Archbishop of Boston were the prelates honored. On their return from receiving the red hats at Rome, the new Cardinals were enthusiastically received by Americans of all religions.

CHAPTER LXXIV

WOODROW WILSON, TWENTY-EIGHTH
PRESIDENT

544—Democratic Victory, 1912. A Three Cornered Fight

In 1912, the Republicans re-nominated Wm. H. Taft for the Presidency. Ex-President Theodore Roosevelt and his followers bolted the convention, and formed a new "Progressive Party," with Roosevelt as its nominee.



Woodrow Wilson

The Democrats nominated Woodrow Wilson, born in Virginia, but at the time Governor of New Jersey. Wilson was elected on account of the vote against him being divided.

545—Wilson's Administration
(1913-1921)

Wilson at once called an extra session of Congress and after a long and very bitter debate the Tariff was reduced on many articles (1913).

546—Sixteenth Amendment

An amendment to the Constitution allowing the Federal Government to lay a tax on incomes was ratified by the states (1913). The tax became necessary, and was applied, when the reduced tariff failed to bring in enough money to run the government.

547—Seventeenth Amendment

This amendment, ratified in 1913, calls for the election of

United States Senators by the direct vote of the people, instead of by the State Legislatures, as heretofore.

548—Federal Reserve Bank

The banking system of the country was not sound, and a remedy was found by establishing the Federal Reserve System. Soon most of the banks of the country joined it and thus formed a very strong union of resources.

549—Public and Private Works

Many large operations were undertaken about this time. Among them may be mentioned:

The extension and development of the Parcels Post System.

Building a government railroad to connect Alaska's coal fields with the coast.

Building the Erie Barge Canal across New York.

Building the Cape Cod Canal.

Building the great dam across the Mississippi at Keokuk, Iowa, by means of which electric power is developed.

550—New Laws; Woman Suffrage

Unjust business combinations were further curbed by the Anti-Trust and Federal Trade Commission Laws. The farmer was helped by several laws which provided means for him to borrow money; gave him good roads; and taught him to farm scientifically.

A grave railroad strike was averted by the Adamson Eight-Hour Law which met the demands of the men.

About this time the question of allowing women to vote became important. Up to this time this matter had been dealt with by each state. Some states allowed women to vote and others did not. The women all over the country now demanded the right to vote.

551—Virgin Islands Bought

In 1917 the United States paid Denmark \$25,000,000 for the Danish West Indies, which are called the Virgin Islands. The three principal islands are St. Thomas, St. John, and Santa Cruz (Holy Cross). They are valuable principally as a naval base and we could not afford to let them get into the hands of a European nation.

552—Mexico

Francisco Madero led a revolution in Mexico, in 1911, and drove out President Diaz, who had ruled the country as a dictator for thirty years. Madero was in turn deposed by General Huerta. Some American sailors were arrested by one of Huerta's officers. The United States demanded an apology and a twenty-one gun salute to the American flag. Huerta refused and our fleet was sent to Vera Cruz. The city was taken with a loss of seventeen Americans. Huerta's supplies were cut off and he soon abdicated.

For a long time thereafter Mexico was in a state of continual revolution and anarchy. American interests suffered much. In many cases our citizens were persecuted and their property taken from them.

553—Pursuit of Villa

When Huerta left conditions became worse. President Wilson finally recognized a faction headed by Carranza as President. Then the bandit Villa turned on the Americans and killed and wounded several in a raid into our country. Our regular troops were sent in pursuit, under command of General John J. Pershing, and the National Guard of all the states was ordered to the border. Matters remained unsatisfactory in Mexico, but our attention was drawn away by the European War.

CHAPTER LXXV

THE WORLD WAR

554—Rival Races

In the early summer of 1914, it seemed to most people that there would be peace for many years to come. In fact some people were bold enough to believe that the last war had been fought. They did not take into account the great rivalry that existed between the different races of Europe, Latin, Teuton, and Slav. The principal Latin nations involved were France and Italy; the Teutons were Germany and Austria; and the Slavs, Russia and the Balkan nations.

555—European Alliances

Germany, which had the most powerful army in Europe, made an alliance with Austria and Italy. This agreement, called the Triple Alliance, was really not very strong because it only called on the parties to fight in case they were attacked. Italy really hated Austria and did not join the Teutons in the war because they were not attacked, but did the attacking themselves.

France, Russia and England feared the powerful Triple Alliance and drew together in another group. They did not have a regular alliance but only an understanding, and so they became known as the Triple Entente (ahn-tahnt), this being a French word meaning "agreement."

556—Slav and Teuton Interests Clash

At a time when Russia was in a feeble state, after her war with Japan, Austria annexed two small Slavic states, Bosnia and Herzegovina. This was very displeasing to Serbia, one of the Balkan nations. Serbia had hoped some day to unite with Bosnia and Herzegovina and form a

large and powerful Slavic nation. It was also displeasing to Russia, who did not like to see the Teutons gain any further control over Slav peoples. Russia made up her mind that she would not allow anything more of this kind to happen.

557—Murder of an Archduke

June 28th, 1914, the Archduke Francis Ferdinand, heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary, and his wife, were murdered in the city of Serajevo (sesr-ah-yeh-vo), capital of Bosnia. The murderer was a Serbian. The deed in itself was a dastardly crime and all the world was indignant.

558—The War Starts

Austria, with Germany's consent, soon made certain very severe demands on Serbia. The rulers of these countries knew that Serbia could not give in to these demands and retain her national self-respect. If she resisted alone she would soon be conquered; and if Russia came to help her there would be a general war. Serbia did accept all of Austria's demands except one and she offered to arbitrate this, but Austria refused and declared war, July 28, 1914.

559—General War

Russia began to get her army together to go to the help of Serbia, and Germany at once declared war on Russia and on her ally, France (August 1st and 3rd). German leaders had long planned just what they would do in case of war with France and Russia. They would throw their enormous army against France first, beat her, and then take care of Russia. The main difficulty was to get at France easily and quickly. The border between Germany and France was very well guarded by many strong fortresses, and the country there was rough and easy to defend.

560—Belgium Invaded

There was a quick and easy way to France, that is through Belgium. However, Germany had given her word of honor, as had all the great nations of Europe, to refrain from invading Belgium. That country had been declared

to be a neutral nation, that is, one which was not supposed to make war and whose territory all other nations would keep away from. The temptation was too great for the Kaiser and he treated the treaty as "a scrap of paper," and sent his armies into Belgium.

561—Belgians Resist

Germany promised Belgium to pay for all damage and respect her independence if she would let her go through without fighting. King Albert and his Belgian people scorned such an offer and fought like



© International Newsreel Co.

King Albert of Belgium

heroes to resist the invasion. England now came into the war on the side of the "Allies," as France, Russia, Belgium, and herself came to be called. England did this, because Germany had broken her treaty; because of the French-English understanding; and because she feared that if Germany won she would be the next to be attacked. The brave fight of the Belgians delayed the Germans and

at last the French and a small English army came up. They, too, were defeated by the Germans and forced to fall back till Paris, the French capital, seemed doomed.

562—Battle of the Marne

General Joffre, the French commander, had a secret army in Paris and when the Germans came near the city, sent it out to attack them. This delayed that part of the German line, and as the rest of the German army kept going forward in an attempt to cut through the French, the line became thin at one place. General Foch, who was in command of the French center, saw his chance and cut through the thin part of the German line. This won the "Battle of the Marne," forced a retreat of the whole German force, and sent them back as far as the River Aisne, where both armies dug trenches.

563—The War in 1915

This year was unfavorable to the Allies. Trench warfare continued in France with but little change in the battle line. Trench warfare was a nightmare of horrors. The firing in many sectors was continuous, the men lived in deep trenches, wet and cold and suffering from rats and vermin. Barbed wire protected the trenches and this could only be penetrated after it had been cut by shells. The invention of the "tank," a small steel fort which travelled on a caterpillar drive and overcame all obstacles, gave great promise of bringing the war into the open. In 1915, the Germans first used poison gas against the Canadians. To protect the men against it gas masks were invented.

564—Fighting in the East

Russia, whose armies had been fighting back and forth

over eastern Prussia and Austria, was badly beaten and lost all of Poland. Turkey and Bulgaria went into the war on the side of Germany and the Allies lost heavily



© International Newsreel Co.

A poison gas attack

at "Gallipoli," in an attempt to clear a way to Russia through the Dardanelles.

565—The War in 1916

Some important happenings of this year were favorable to the Allies. At the fortress of Verdun the Germans made a terrible attack lasting from February till late in the summer. The French, under General Petain, had sworn "they shall not pass," and fought them to a standstill. The naval "Battle of Jutland" was claimed as a victory by the Germans, but their ships retired after it and never again came out to fight. Italy and Roumania, seeing the justice of the Allied cause, entered the war on their side.

CHAPTER LXXVI

THE UNITED STATES DECLARES WAR

566—The United States and the War

When the war started President Wilson issued a proclamation of neutrality and warned all citizens to be fair to both sides. The sympathies of the people were very evenly divided between the two groups of fighting nations, as many of our people were of German descent and others were unfavorable to England.

However, the gratitude felt by many of our people for the aid France gave us during our Revolution and the feeling that the rulers of Germany were the aggressors in the war, gradually began to turn the sympathies of Americans to the Allies.

567—The Lusitania Sunk

To make matters worse for them in our eyes the Germans commenced, in 1915, to use their submarine boats in an unlawful way. They sank merchant ships without warning, which was entirely contrary to the law of nations. The worst instance of this was the *S.S. Lusitania*. This great ship was sunk without notice and more than a thousand people drowned, of whom more than one hundred were Americans.

568—Submarine Warfare

The United States protested at the *Lusitania* outrage but Germany never admitted she was wrong. When the *S.S. Arabic* was sunk, however, she apologized, and when the *Sussex* was sent down, and two Americans lost, we threatened to send home the German Ambassador. Germany then made a formal promise to cease sinking merchant vessels and taking the lives of those on board.

569—Wilson Re-elected

In the election of 1916 President Wilson was returned to office for a second term over Charles E. Hughes, the Republican candidate. Many voted for him because he "kept us out of war"; others voted against him because he was too severe on Germany.



© International Newsreel Co.

Rescuing the passengers from a torpedoed steamship

570—Unrestricted Submarine Warfare

In January, 1917, Germany was ready to stake her all on the submarines and announced to us that after February 1st she would sink all ships found in the waters around England and France, except one ship a week which she would kindly allow the United States to send to England.

Our patience, now about exhausted, was further tried

when a note was made public which had been sent by Germany to her minister at Mexico. In it he was advised to make an alliance with Mexico and Japan to wage war on us and to recover New Mexico, Texas, and Arizona.

571—United States Declares War

All these outrages against our citizens and our shipping were more than enough to justify our entering the war but another feeling had by this time spread over the land. It was felt that it was our duty to enter the war in the defense of right and justice; that it was our duty to go to the rescue of the liberties of the world, so openly threatened by the Kaiser. In the words of President Wilson, we were forced into the conflict, because "The world must be made safe for democracy."

On Good Friday, April 6th, the Congress of the United States declared war on Germany.

572—Preparations

America was not prepared for war. We had a very good, but very small, regular army, and from it a small number of troops were sent to France, in June, under command of General John J. Pershing. Our National Guard was in good shape from its tour on the Mexican border. Volunteers were called



© International Newsreel Co.

General Pershing

for and in this way the army, navy, and Marine Corps were enlarged. But we would need several million men and could not depend on volunteers entirely.

573—The Draft

So Congress passed the Selective Draft Act, which made all the young men of the country liable for service. On June 10th, ten millions of our young men registered and later were drawn by lot to make up the new army. Officers' training camps were established, great cantonments built, and soon the army was gathered together and in full training. Eventually about four million men were under arms.

574—The War in 1917

The balance of this year, after our entry into the war, was a time of preparation for us. But in Europe, and on the sea, events of great importance happened.

In Russia a revolution took place and the Czar was driven from his throne and he and his family murdered. Before the end of the year conditions in that country had become very bad. The Bolsheviki, or "mob," had taken control, the armies melted away, and Russia practically was out of the war.

The Austrians then left the Russian front and attacked and defeated Italy in the "Battle of Caporetto." It was one of the worst defeats of the war.

575—The Submarine Menace

During 1917 the submarine did its greatest damage. These boats infested the seas and sank hundreds of ships, great and small. For a time it looked as if they would win out and cut England off from the world. But the American and British navies fought desperately against

these pirate boats and gradually overcame them. Thousands of small chasers, drifters, destroyers, and airplanes were used in the hunt. The depth bomb proved the best means of sinking them. This was a large can filled with very powerful explosives which was dropped over in the vicinity of the U-boat and crushed it by the power of its explosion.



© International Newsreel Co.

A German submarine

576—The American Navy

Besides taking a very prominent part in hunting submarines the American navy also sent a squadron of dreadnoughts to join the British Grand Fleet, which was bottling up the German ships in Kiel.

Through the combined efforts of the two navies we were able to transport our enormous army to France with practically no loss.

577—The German Drives

Early in 1918 Russia was completely out of the war and the Germans brought many of their troops from that front to France. In March they started a series of great attacks by which they hoped to win the war. The first of these is known as the "Battle of Picardy." It was aimed

at the English, and threw them back in disorder forty miles towards Amiens. Had not the French come up the Germans would have cut off the English from the rest of the line with perhaps disastrous results. The second drive was aimed at the British line in Flanders, and was intended to drive it back to the English Channel. It almost succeeded.

578—Germany Nearly Wins the War

Three other attacks aimed at the French line once more brought the Germans to the River Marne. During all these drives things looked very black for the Allies and it seemed as though the German armies might at any time break through for a victory. But this period marked the beginning of America's fight, at "Chateau Thierry." It also marked the appointment of the French general, Ferdinand Foch, to supreme command of the Allied armies.

CHAPTER LXXVII

AMERICA TURNS THE TIDE

579—America Begins to Fight

Up to the time of the third drive our troops had done but little fighting. Only a few hundred thousands had been able to get to France and they were busy training and preparing. As soon as the danger from the German drives was realized, a great effort was made by us and from May on an average of 300,000 Americans were sent across each month. At "Seichprey" our boys withstood a fierce attack and a little later they took the town of "Cantigny" and held it against the strongest attacks of the Prussian Guard.

580—Chateau Thierry

When the Germans, during the third drive, reached "Chateau Thierry," on the Marne, forty-two miles from Paris, American troops were hastily brought up and thrown into line to stop them. The 7th Motorized Machine Gun Battalion of the 3rd Division made a thrilling entry into the fight, dashing up with their guns to the Chateau Thierry bridge only in time to prevent the Germans crossing the Marne. Our 2nd Division, of marines and regulars, were thrown into line across the road to Paris. On June 4th the Germans charged forward to sweep them out of their way. They were met with a rain of bullets from the guns of the marines and halted in their tracks. The enemy never gained another foot towards Paris.

581—Belleau Wood

American generals believe that the best way to defend is to attack and so as soon as the German rushes were stopped our boys were sent "over the top" to drive them



© International Newsreel Co.

A real war picture. Our boys go "over the top" through barbed wire

back. The enemy were located in a thick wood which was easy to defend, and they sent a storm of bullets from their hidden machine guns and rifles. But they could not stop the marines, who fought with great bravery and slowly cleared the woods of the Germans. Day after day the bitter fight kept up, but by the end of June, "Belleau Wood" belonged to the United States Marines. Their partners, the regulars, took "Vaux," and the city of Paris breathed a sigh of relief.

582—The Effect

These actions were small compared to some of the terrific engagements of the war, but they were of very great importance in their effect. They proved the fighting qualities of the American troops. We had known how our troops would fight, but to the Allies and to the enemy, it seemed impossible that boys, fresh from civil life, could be made into first class soldiers in so short a time. Chateau Thierry proved the stuff the Yankee boys were made of.

583—The Second Battle of the Marne

The Fifth German drive started on July 15th. For three days the allied world waited with fear. The Germans crossed the Marne at places, among them at a point near Chateau Thierry. But they were soon driven back by our splendid 3rd Division. Along the Champagne front our troops, notably the 42nd, or Rainbow Division, composed of troops from all over America, and including the old "Fighting 69th" of New York, were in line. With their French allies these troops stood like rocks and all along the rest of the line the French held their ground.

584—The Great Counter Attack

On July 18th, Foch ordered a great counter attack on the German line from Soissons to Chateau Thierry. The 1st and 2nd Divisions of the American army had the place of honor in the line which smashed forward seven miles the first day. The Germans were badly caught in the Marne pocket and hastened to escape as best they could. Other American Divisions were thrown in with the French to help drive the Germans back. Among them were the 26th, from New England, and the 28th Division from Pennsylvania. The 77th Division, the first of the National Army, or draft, divisions was also in this fight. It ended only when the Germans had been driven back to the place they started from months before.

© INTERNATIONAL NEWS PICTURE CO.**Marshal Foch****585—Foch's Grand Attack**

More than a million Americans were now in France and still more were rapidly arriving. Foch felt free to fight the war his own way, which meant to attack at every point. On August 8th he ordered forward the

British forces in Picardy. Fighting with them were our 27th Division, from New York, under Maj. Gen. O’Ryan, and the 30th Division, from the South. At the same time the French attacked along their sectors. Everywhere success was with the Allies. Blow followed blow, during the following weeks, and early in September Foch had retaken all the great gains of the enemy and driven them back to the “Hindenburg line” again. This was a very strongly fortified line of trenches named after the German general who had been very successful against the Russians.

586—St. Mihiel

Up to that time the Americans had had no army organization of their own, but had fought with the French or British, as directed by Foch. Now, however, the time had come for them to do something on their own account. Very early in the war (1914) the Germans had driven a wedge into the French line which had its point at the town of “St. Mihiel.” It was so strongly held that it seemed to defy attack. General Pershing now organized the First American Army, and on September 12th it attacked the “St. Mihiel” salient on two sides. In twenty-seven hours the position had been completely taken and 16,000 prisoners were ours.

587—Foch Calls on Americans Again

It had been expected that, after taking the St. Mihiel salient, the American forces would rest and train to get in readiness for their greatest effort. This was to be made in the spring of 1919 and was intended to cut the German lines of communication in the valley of the Meuse River. So splendid had been the behavior of our troops at “St. Mihiel,” however, that Marshal Foch and General

Pershing agreed to attempt this operation at once, and shorten the war by six months, if it succeeded.

588—The Argonne-Meuse Campaign

On September 26th the Americans attacked up the valley of the Meuse and through the "Argonne" Forest. For five weeks our troops fought one of the greatest battles in



© International Newsreel Co.

"Cleaning up," after driving out the enemy

history, meeting the pick of the German troops and driving them back through a country that was so hard to penetrate that never before had it been attempted. By November 1st, the resistance of the Germans had been broken. They retreated rapidly and the Americans reached and cut the main railroad supplying them. Then, in the words of General Pershing, "Nothing but surrender or an armistice could save their army from complete disaster."

589—Breaking the Hindenburg Line

While the Americans were fighting the Argonne battle, Foch was hammering away at the Germans on all other

fronts. The English, aided by the 27th and 30th American Divisions, attacked the strong Hindenburg Line. With the Americans and Australians in the van they broke through near St. Quentin. The French were fighting like heroes as usual, and the whole German line was now caving in. Foch gave the enemy no rest but delivered his blows from one end of the line to the other, and on all fronts.

590—On Eastern Fronts

In Palestine the British, under General Allenby, split the Turkish army and put them out of the war.

In the Balkans the French and Allies drove forward and soon had the Bulgarians in a bad way. They begged for terms, and September 29th accepted an armistice that amounted to complete surrender.

591—Austria Out of the War

The collapse of Bulgaria was a serious blow to Austria. She could now be attacked through her southern border and her people at home were sick of the war. In June, Austria had made a strong attack on Italy but had been repulsed and in the fall the Italians in turn advanced. The Austrian lines broke and her generals asked for terms. The Italians refused and the retreat became a rout, which did not stop till the cities of Trent and Trieste had fallen. An armistice was then signed which put Austria out of the war under the most severe terms, and gave the Allies the right to attack Germany through Austrian territory. All his allies had been whipped and the Kaiser now faced the music alone.

CHAPTER LXXVIII

GERMANY DEFEATED

592—Germany Asks for Terms

President Wilson had announced in the beginning that America entered the war for no purpose of gain in money or territory, and it was naturally to him that the Germans turned to get terms for peace. The President had stated the position of America in his "Fourteen Points." These outlined what we demanded to stop the war. Germany now asked an armistice based on these conditions. The President replied that this could only be granted when Germany's army had been made helpless, and the old autocratic government of that country done away with. He referred the military terms to Marshal Foch.

593—German Empire Becomes a Republic

Early in November, when things were desperate for the Germans, the Highseas Fleet was ordered out to give battle to the combined British and American fleet. The crews refused and revolted. The rebellion spread and Soldiers' and Workmen's Councils were everywhere appointed. The Kaiser and the Crown Prince fled to Holland, the Empire was overthrown, and a Republic established. On November 11th the terms of Marshal Foch were accepted, an armistice was signed, and the fighting stopped.

594—Cause of German Defeat

The Germans almost won the war in the spring of 1918, and were utterly defeated in the fall. What caused this great reversal in so short a time? It was the arrival of two millions of American troops. There were other things that helped very much, but it was the Americans who decided the matter. A single command—under Marshal

Foch, who proved to be the greatest general of modern times—did much to win. The blockade of Germany, cutting her off from supplies and trade, helped a great deal. The fear the German people had that they would be forced to undergo the terrible sufferings of an invasion also made them more willing to give in. But none of these things would have won the war had it not been that the Yankees arrived in time and proved that as fighters they were second to none.

595—The Peace Conference

Delegates from the victorious nations were called together in Paris to prepare the terms of a treaty of peace. As President Wilson had taken the most prominent part in framing the general terms of the armistice, he felt it his duty to go in person to the Conference. He felt it would be a useless thing to sign a treaty of peace which did not have some guarantee that peace would be kept. To this end he urged the nations to unite in a League of Nations which he thought would do much to make war impossible.

596—The War at Home

While our boys were deciding the war against Germany in France those Americans who were not able to get across were doing their duty nobly. Four Liberty Loans were taken with a total of eighteen billions in subscriptions; War Savings Stamps were sold to a huge total; and the Red Cross was liberally supplied with money. Our women responded nobly to the call for bandages and knit goods, while the children did their part in the Junior Red Cross, and in selling bonds and "W. S. S."

597—Welfare Organizations

The welfare organizations did wonderful work here and in France. The greatest of them was the Red Cross,

whose principal work was with the wounded and sick, and with the sufferers in the devastated parts of Europe. The Y. M. C. A., the Knights of Columbus, the Salvation Army, and other organizations of this kind did a splendid service.

598—Supplying the Front

War in modern days is more or less of a manufacturing matter. The nation that can make the greatest amount



© International Newsreel Co.

American aviators at the front

of supplies and munitions has the best chance to win. As soon as America entered the war our vast resources were turned to war work, and the record made did much to impress Germany with the hopelessness of trying to hold out against us. We became, almost over-night, the greatest shipbuilding country in the world, our great plants turned out munitions in vast quantities, whole railroads, from rails to locomotives, were sent to France, and new and destructive devices were made ready to use against the

enemy. Much of our output never reached the front, but we may be sure that the breakdown of the Germans was hastened by the knowledge of what we were preparing.

599—Troops Engaged and Losses

At the close of the fighting period our total armed forces amounted to over four and a quarter million men, divided between the army, navy and Marine corps. In the army slightly over two million men reached the other side and nearly 1,400,000 were actually engaged in combat at one time or another. Our losses were about 250,000, which included killed in action, wounded, missing, and prisoners.

CHAPTER LXXIX CATHOLICS' PART IN THE WAR



© International Newsreel Co.

Cardinal Mercier

600—Catholics in the War

American Catholics look back upon the war with a peculiar satisfaction. In common with their fellow countrymen they rejoiced over the great showing made by American troops, and they joined with their fellow Catholics throughout the world in admiration of the part taken by the Church. Nothing in history is finer than the gallant stand made by the Bel-

gian people and their brave King Albert. They saved the liberty of France and perhaps of the world, during the few days they held up the German onslaught. These people are one of the most Catholic nations of Europe. Their magnificent prelate, Cardinal Mercier, became admired and loved by the whole Allied world for the courageous stand he took against the invader.

601—Marshal Foch

In France at the very beginning of the war over twenty thousand priests, many of them in exile in foreign lands, hastened to the call, took their places in the ranks, and became the bravest and most frequently cited soldiers of France. Ferdinand Foch, commander of that French army that won the Battle of the Marne by breaking through the Germans, was a Catholic. His religion kept him in the background for a time but during the awful days of the spring of 1918, when no one seemed able to stop the German drives, Foch was sent for. Placed in supreme command of all the armies opposed to Germany, it was not long before he snatched victory from near defeat. Foch is not only a Catholic but a very devout one. He had his own Chaplain and received Holy Communion as often as possible. Before his great attack, which was the beginning of the end for Germany, he placed his armies under the protection of the Sacred Heart. His brother was a Jesuit priest.

602—Other Catholics

Many other of the leading French generals were Catholic. In Italy the same may be said. In the ranks of the Allies the proportion of Catholics was large. Besides those from Belgium, France and Italy, there were many in the British Army, mostly of Irish blood, from Ireland

or the Colonies. Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa, all sent a large proportion of Catholics.

603—The Pope

The position of the Holy Father was difficult because his children were in every country. But in matters connected purely with right and justice he took a strong stand. He was the only neutral to protest against the injustice done Belgium, and he exerted every means to alleviate the sufferings of those in devastated lands, and to bring about the exchange of prisoners.

604—American Catholics

Catholics can always be proud of the part taken by our people in every branch of service during the Great War, but proudest of the great number of Catholic boys who rushed to the defense of the flag at the first call. It is estimated that Catholics composed 35% of the army, 40% of the navy, and 50% of the Marine Corps. This is far in excess of our proportion, which was 17% of the population.



© International Newsreel Co.

Admiral Benson

605—Individuals

In the Army a large number of officers were Catholic. Among them may be mentioned Major General O'Ryan, commanding the 27th Division. In the Navy, Admiral Benson, with the highest rank in the service, and Admiral Griffin, Chief Engineer, were Catholics. Among those Catholics who did much towards winning

the war in other directions were Charles M. Schwab, in charge of ship-building, Edward Hurley, head of the Emergency Fleet, and John D. Ryan, who took over the construction of airplanes when things were in a snarl.

606—Knights of Columbus

The Knights of Columbus came forward at the beginning of the war and took over Catholic welfare work among the soldiers. Starting the work with their own funds, they were soon helped by large subscriptions from all Catholics and finally by the whole people. They sent a great number of Chaplains to minister to the boys at home and abroad, as well as a still larger number of secretaries who had the amusement and care of the soldiers in hand. Huts were constructed back of the trenches, aid and comfort given the boys and a vast amount of amusement provided for them. The work done by this organization, called so suddenly to take up duties entirely new to it, was greatly appreciated by the soldiers.

IMPORTANT FACTS IN SECTION XIV

1. William H. Taft, the twenty-seventh President, continued the work of curbing the business "trusts." A Catholic, Edward D. White, was appointed Chief Justice of the United States.

2. Woodrow Wilson, twenty-eighth President, reduced the tariff. Sixteenth Amendment (Income Tax) and Seventeenth Amendment (Election of U. S. Senators by direct vote of people) passed.

3. Banking system of country put on solid basis by creation of Federal Reserve System.

4. Trouble with Mexico, which nation had long series of revolutions. Vera Cruz taken, Huerta forced to abdicate

Presidency. National Guard sent to border. Villa pursued into Mexico by troops under Gen. John J. Pershing.

5. Great War starts in Europe by attack on Serbia by Austria with German consent. France, Russia and England arrayed against Germany and Austria. United States neutral.

6. Germans violate Belgian neutrality and enter France through that country. Sweep to gates of Paris but are stopped by Battle of Marne. Armies intrench and battle lines in France sway back and forth over small area till end of war.

7. German submarine warfare violates American rights. Lusitania and other ships sunk, Americans lost. Germany called to account stops practice temporarily. Wilson re-elected President. Germany declares unrestricted submarine warfare.

8. American feeling first neutral had turned to side of Allies, who represented democracy against the autocratic ideals of the German Kaiser. April 6th, 1917, the United States declared war against Germany. We entered for no selfish reason but because "the world must be made safe for democracy."

9. Russia put out of war by revolution. Germany almost crushes Allies in five great drives. Ferdinand Foch appointed to supreme command of Allies. Americans thrown into France in vast numbers show their mettle at "Chateau Thierry," and lead counter-attack south of Soissons which turns the tide of war.

10. Americans take St. Mihiel salient and then in long series of terrible struggles force the Argonne Forest and cut German communications. This, together with series of victories by French and English, forces Germany to ask for Armistice (Nov. 11th, 1918). American troops had made victory possible for the Allies.

SECTION XV

NEW PROBLEMS

CHAPTER LXXX

THE PEACE TREATY

607—Death of Roosevelt

A few months after the Armistice, on January 6th, 1919, Theodore Roosevelt, the twenty-sixth President of the United States, died. Many looked on this famous son of New York as one of our greatest Presidents, and felt that his loss at that time was a severe one.

608—The Peace Treaty

Under the terms of the Treaty of Peace with Germany which President Wilson had agreed on in Paris, a League of Nations was established. In order, however, that this treaty should be binding on America it had to be ratified by the United States Senate. Much opposition to the League developed in the Senate among the Republican members and a small number of Democrats.

609—League of Nations Opposed

This majority of Senators claimed, among other things, that, if our country entered into the League, we would be bound under it to send our troops to Europe, if force became necessary to settle future disputes; that we would not be entirely independent if we had a body like the League over us that could order us to do its bidding. They also claimed that entering the League would be contrary to the advice of Washington to avoid entangling foreign alliances.

610—Illness of Wilson

President Wilson was anxious to convince the people that they should support the League. He started on a nation-wide speaking trip but before it was finished the President was taken severely ill. He was rushed to the White House and for months was near death.

611—Treaty and League Rejected

In the meantime the opponents of the League were gaining strength and early in the spring of 1920 were able to force the rejection of the Peace Treaty and the Covenant of the League of Nations. Later on, other treaties were ratified, and on Nov. 11th, 1921, the President formally proclaimed peace with Germany.

612—High Cost of Living

Beginning with the spring of 1915 business became very active and profitable in America because the Allies bought great quantities of supplies from us. Furthermore, other countries that had looked to the fighting nations for goods, turned to us for their supplies. Prices of all things gradually crept up until the "H.C.L.," or "high cost of living," became one of the problems of the day. It caused much unrest, strikes, and resistance to the profiteering of those who controlled necessities. The government, with very heavy expenses, was forced to exact a high income tax, which was another burden.

613—Prosperity Followed by Bad Times

Much gold was sent to America to pay for our goods and the rest of the world became our debtors. New York succeeded London as the financial capital of the world, as it had also become the world's largest city. America carried on an enormous trade with the rest of the world.

Business continued very good until the middle of 1920 when a sudden collapse came about. For a year and a half things were in a very bad way and there was much unemployment.

614—Eighteenth and Nineteenth Amendments

The Eighteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which went into effect early in 1920, established nation-wide prohibition. It made unlawful the manufacture or sale of intoxicating beverages. The law under which it is enforced is called the Volstead Act.

The Nineteenth Amendment, ratified in 1920, established the right of women citizens to vote anywhere in the Union.

C H A P T E R L X X X I

WARREN G. HARDING, TWENTY-NINTH PRESIDENT

615—Election of 1920

The feeling of the country was against those in power, as is often the case after a period filled with events of tremendous importance. The Republicans nominated Warren G. Harding of Ohio for president and he was elected by a great majority over James M. Cox, the Democrat (November, 1920). On taking office President Harding selected Charles M. Hughes for Secretary of State. Later on he appointed ex-President Taft as Chief Justice of the United States Supreme Court.

616—Census of 1920

The fourteenth census of the country showed a population of nearly one hundred and six millions in the main body of the Union. Including the Territories and outlying

possessions there were about one hundred and eighteen millions.

617—America and Japan

England and Japan had entered into a military alliance which the United States did not like, as there were several matters in dispute between America and Japan. These matters principally concerned the islands of the Pacific, and Japan's attitude towards China and other countries bordering on that ocean. Facing these and other uncertainties of the future, the United States had entered upon a building programme for its navy which in a very few years would have made it the greatest in the world. Japan was also building many warships.

618—Washington Conference. Disarmament

In the summer of 1921 President Harding invited France, England, and Japan to send delegates to Wash-



International Newsreel Co.

The Washington conference in session

ington to try to reach an agreement on matters in dispute in the Far East, and to do something towards the limitation of armaments. At the very beginning of this conference Secretary Hughes astonished the world by proposing a ten-year naval holiday, during which no new battleships should be built. He also proposed that the nations should "scrap" many of the large ships in process of construction, or finished. This was acceptable to the other nations, the alliance between England and Japan was ended, and an agreement was reached covering the rights of the various nations in the Far East.

619—American Legion. Unknown Warrior

A great majority of the men who had served in the armed forces of the nation during the war formed themselves into the American Legion, an association for their benefit and protection.

In the fall of 1921 the body of an unknown American soldier, killed in battle in France, was transported to America and laid at rest, with greatest honors, in the national cemetery at Arlington.

620—Restriction of Immigration

Conditions in Europe after the war were very bad and tens of thousands of her people wanted to come to America. Most of them were from southern and eastern Europe, and were considered undesirable by a majority of Americans. A law was passed which only allowed a small number of people to come here each year and those principally from the northern mainland of Europe and Great Britain and the Irish Free State.

621—Death of Harding

President Harding went to Alaska to look over that

Territory and see what could be done to develop its riches. On his way back, while at San Francisco, the President became ill and died (Aug. 2nd, 1923).

CHAPTER LXXXII

CALVIN COOLIDGE, THIRTIETH PRESIDENT

622—Takes Oath of Office

When Harding died, Calvin Coolidge, the Vice-President, immediately took the oath of office as President. He was sworn in by his father in the little village of Plymouth, in Vermont, where he was born.

623—Government Scandals

It was found that certain government officials had not been doing their duty and that dishonesty and graft had crept in, in connection with leasing of government oil lands. Albert Fall, ex-Secretary of the Interior, was named. Secretary Denby resigned, though personally not accused of dishonesty. Later Attorney General Daugherty also resigned.

624—President and Congress. Wilson Dies

The new President and Congress did not agree on several matters. A bill giving soldiers in the Great War extra compensation or "bonus" was passed over the President's veto. Income taxes were reduced one quarter.

On February 3rd Woodrow Wilson, great war President, passed away. He had never fully recovered from the attack of illness he suffered while advocating the League of Nations.

625—Presidential Nominations

The Republicans nominated Calvin Coolidge for Presi-

dent. The Democratic convention, held in New York City, developed a bitter fight between the Ku Klux Klan and its opponents. This detestable organization, which opposed all Catholics, Jews, and negroes, was composed of ignorant and bigoted people from those parts of the country where education and enlightenment were uncommon.

The forces opposed to the Klan were led by Gov. Alfred E. Smith, of New York, a Roman Catholic, the first to seek a nomination for President. While he did not succeed he was able to block the nomination of the Klan favorite. After a very long fight John W. Davis, of West Virginia, was nominated.



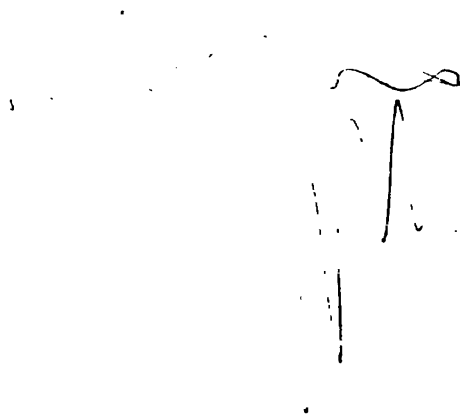
© International Newsreel Co.

President Coolidge and Vice-President Dawes

626—Coolidge Elected

A landslide of votes for Coolidge won the election for him. Governor Smith was re-elected governor of New

York in face of the great vote for Coolidge. President Coolidge had become known as the great advocate of thrift and economy. His inauguration on March 4th, 1925, was marked by great simplicity.



CLASS DISCUSSIONS

The Class Discussions are meant to be held in class, with the open book, and to be participated in by all. The teacher should see that the brighter children do not usurp the whole discussion, but by judicious questioning and prompting should bring all the pupils into the conference.

Section 1. Have you ever seen an Indian? Did he resemble those described in Section 1?

Would you think the Indians who lived in wigwams, or in "long houses" of bark, or in houses of sun-dried brick the most civilized? Why?

What qualities do you admire in the Indian character, and what do you dislike?

"Printing," and "China," and the "Turks," all had something to do with the discovery of America. Discuss this. Which do you think had most to do with it?

Have you ever read Joaquin Miller's poem, "Columbus"? Try and learn it by heart.

Three things were necessary for the success of Columbus: his conviction that he was right, his courage to undertake the voyage, and his persistence in carrying it through. Which of these traits do you admire most?

Columbus died poor and neglected and was looked upon as a failure. What do you think of him?

Some people who dislike Columbus's Catholicity would rather give the credit for discovering America to Leif Ericson. Do you think this helps their case any?

Section 2. Look at the map following page 10 and explain why Balboa called the Pacific Ocean the "South Sea."

On a map or globe trace the route of Magellan around the world—from Spain through the Straits of Magellan to the Philippine Islands, and then around the Cape of Good Hope to Europe again. How could you cut off a great deal of the trip at the present time?

Compare the purposes of the trips of Ponce de Leon and Fernando de Soto, to Florida.

How would you have liked to have been one of Champlain's party? Do you think he was a good leader? Explain your answer.

Do you think that which Henry Hudson really found turned out to be as valuable as a "Northwest Passage" would have been? Explain.

Of what value do you consider the attempts of Gilbert and Raleigh to plant settlements in America?

Section 3. Do you think the fact that the Spaniards wanted to convert the Indians, as well as get riches from the new country, helped them to make settlements so much sooner than the other nations?

Give your reasons why American boys and girls should remember "Jamestown, 1607."

What do you think was the difference between a "trading post" and a settlement?

Do you think the "House of Burgesses," the "Mayflower Compact," the "Confederation of New England," and the incident of the "Charter Oak" showed a desire on the part of the colonists for self-government and union? Explain.

If you had your choice, which colony would you have joined, Virginia, Massachusetts, or Rhode Island? Why?

Turn to map after page 56. On smaller map, point out Merrimack River and Piscataqua River. What settlement was originally between these rivers?

Do you admire Roger Williams? Explain.

Discuss the character of the Puritans, their good points and weak ones, and show what brought them success.

Section 4. On what do you think the chief fame of the Maryland colony rests? Give your reasons.

The French in America and the Maryland colonists had little trouble with the Indians. Do you think their religion had anything to do with this? Explain.

Mention two ways in which the colonies of Pennsylvania and Maryland resembled each other.

Why were Catholic missionaries frequently great explorers?

Which had the greater practical result, De Soto's *discovery*, or Marquette's and La Salle's *exploration* of the Mississippi?

The French occupied a vast territory thinly covered by traders and soldiers. The English had a smaller territory with more people who had come to America to seek permanent homes. Which people do you think was likely to overcome the other, and why?

Section 5. The little wars of the old days were fought by comparatively small armies. To-day whole nations take up arms to fight. Do you think this a good reason for doing away with war? Why?

Give an estimate of Washington's character as far as you have studied it. Tell what you think of his courage. Of his foresightedness. Of his military ability.

"Taxation without representation" means about the same thing as if somebody spent money belonging to you, without letting you have any say in the matter. Do you think this right? Explain.

The tax on tea was very small. Do you think the colonists were correct in objecting to it? Why?

If the Quebec Act were now in force and that province ran from the Alleghenies to the Mississippi River and as far south as the Ohio River, what present states would it include? Open your geography and see.

Section 6. Why do you think the first shot fired at Concord has been called "the shot heard round the world"?

Do you think the choice of the Second Congress for Commander-in-Chief was a good one? Why? Do you think the Declaration of Independence was a good thing? Explain.

What is your opinion of the American volunteers who fought the British regulars, or Hessians, at Bunker Hill, Trenton, Saratoga, etc.?

Which do you admire most, Sergeant Jasper, Nathan Hale, or Molly Pitcher? Why?

Why do you suppose Saratoga is called the decisive battle of the Revolution? What do you think would have happened if the British had won it? Could the Americans have fought well if their territory was cut in two?

When General Pershing went to France in the World War he is reported to have said, "Lafayette, we are here." Why do you think he said this and what reference had he to any happenings in the Revolution.

Section 7. Take an outline map and shade in with a pencil all the United States except the states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin. How strange our country would look if Clark had not conquered the territory and it now belonged to Canada!

Do you think Father Gibault's aid to George Rogers Clark should entitle him to great honor in America? Explain.

Washington and Greene, America's best leaders, had similar ideas on fighting. Prove this by comparing Washington's retreat across New Jersey and the Battle of Trenton, with Greene's retreat into Virginia and the Battle of Guilford Court House.

Are you glad the Revolution was fought and won? Tell why.

Considering their small number, do you think Catholics did well in the Revolution? Explain.

Which of the provisions of the Ordinance of 1787 do you admire most? Tell why.

Section 8. Do you think it would have been a good plan of government if the thirteen states had remained independent of one another? Explain.

What had Washington done before being President that would make you expect him to be anything but a military leader?

Cotton brought slaves and slaves brought civil war. But cotton is one of the great necessities of civilization. Do you think it worth its cost? Prove your answer.

Do you think you would have been a follower of John Adams or Thomas Jefferson. Discuss the differences in their ideas of government.

Do you think the invention of the steamboat helped the United States more than any other nation? Explain.

Section 9. Do you suppose the fact that many Americans lived near the seacoast accounts for the naval victories of the War of 1812? Why?

Why do you think many manufactures sprang up in America during the period of the embargo and the blockade of the War of 1812?

Do you think the Missouri Compromise a wise move?

What is your opinion of the Monroe Doctrine?

Why do you think the Erie Canal had so good an effect on New York City?

How would you expect the Erie Canal to affect the interior states?

Section 10. Take an outline map of the United States and shade it all except "Texas" and the "Mexican Cession," as shown on the map following page 186, of this book. Do you think we would have lost much if our country had not taken in this territory?

On the other hand, the question of allowing slavery in the new states, to be carved out of this new territory, caused a great deal of trouble. Were they worth it?

What is your opinion of the Omnibus Bill?

Do you admire Henry Clay? Explain.

Which side of the Lincoln-Douglas debates would you have taken? Give your reasons.

Section 11. Do you think it was a good thing to free the slaves?

The birthday of the nation, July 4th, was celebrated in 1863 by the victories of Gettysburg and Vicksburg. Do you think they were good birthday presents? Why?

Can you explain how the advantages of the North were beginning to tell at this time?

Which general, in either army, do you think had done best, so far in the war?

Section 12. Ask teacher to read, or have the class read, the poem, "Sheridan's Ride."

The Civil War abolished slavery and made the Union permanent. Do you think these results were worth their great cost?

Do you think if Lincoln had lived the South would have had an easier time after the War? Why?

Which amendment made the negro free? Which made him a citizen? Which assured him the right to vote?

The *Alabama* claims were settled by arbitration. Is this a better way than by war? Give your reasons.

Section 13. Do you admire President Cleveland for his Venezuelan Message? Explain.

Let each child write down the name of the large city in the United States that he thinks is almost due north of the Panama Canal. Then find out who is right from a geography.

Do you think it was a generous thing for America to intervene in Cuba?

What do you think was the most important effect of the Spanish War?

Why do you suppose World's Fairs are given that name?

Section 14. The idea of the income tax is that each shall support the government according to his means. Do you think this fair?

CLASS DISCUSSIONS

v

General Pershing first chased Villa in Mexico and then went after the Kaiser. Do you think the people in Mexico and Germany are better off without these two men?

If you had been a French boy or girl would you have felt better after the Americans fought at Chateau Thierry? Why?

Taking it all in all, what do you think of Catholics' part in the Great War?

What do you think is meant by "the world must be made safe for democracy."

TO THE TEACHER

Care should be taken to see that the children study the full text and not simply the answers to these questions. This can be done by frequently varying the questions and asking others besides those in the book.

Care should also be taken to see that the children are well drilled in the "Important Facts," at the end of each section.

QUESTIONS

1. What people lived in America before the white men came? Why were they given this name? What did they look like? What did they wear? What is a "moccasin"? 2. How did the Indians build their homes? What were they called? 3. What kind of homes did Indians in the northwest have? What were these people called? Describe the homes of the Indians of the present New York State. What is a "totem"? A "sachem"? 4. What occupations had the Indians? What were their canoes made of? 5. Describe some Indian weapons. Tell of their hunting methods. 6. How did the Indians carry on war? 7. What is a scalp lock? Describe the "calumet" and tell its uses. 8. What was the religion of these people? 9. How did they treat the women? What were the women called? What were the babies called? 10. Could the Indians write? How did they keep records? What is "wampum"? What did the Indians use for money? 11. Were there many Indians before the white men came?

12. Who were the Northmen or Vikings? What did they discover? Who was Leif Ericson and what did he do? 13. What voyage did Ericson make? What did he call the land he visited? 14. Tell something about the Greenland colony. 15. Was much attention paid to the voyage of the Northmen to Vinland?

16. In the Fifteenth Century what was known of America? What parts of the world were known? Describe travel at that time. Why were people learning more? 17. Who visited China in the Thirteenth Century? What was the result of their visits? 18. Tell something of the trade between Europe and Asia at that time. Describe two trade routes. How did these routes come to be closed? 19. What was the general opinion then about the shape of the earth? What was thought about the oceans? What did some learned people think?

20. Who was Christopher Columbus? Where born? Tell something of his youth. What was his opinion of the shape of the earth? 21. What did Columbus say about a new route to the Indies? 22. What did people say about this plan? To whom did Columbus turn for aid? What were the Spaniards doing at this time? 23. What did Columbus and his little son, Diego, do in 1491? Whom did they fortunately meet? What did Father Perez think of the plan of Columbus? 24. To whom did Father Perez plead the cause of Columbus? What was the result? Tell of the arguments made by Columbus to the Queen. How did Queen Isabella respond to Columbus?

25. Were sailors anxious to make the voyage with Columbus? What were his vessels called? How did Columbus and his companions prepare for the voyage? 26. Describe the feelings of those interested in the voyage. What route did Columbus take? Where did they first touch and what was done then? 27. How did the wind blow and what fear did this cause? Tell something of the voyage. How did it effect the crew? What did Columbus do? 28. What signs were met with after four weeks' sailing? What did Columbus see one night? On what date was land discovered? What did Columbus do when the object of the voyage was attained? 29. Describe the landing of Columbus. What did he call the land? 30. Where did Columbus think he had landed? Where was he actually? What islands did he later

discover? What happened on the coast of Haiti or Hispaniola? 31. Describe the homeward voyage. To whom did Columbus pray? 32. Tell about the reception given Columbus in Spain.

33. How did the Pope divide the undiscovered parts of the world? What did he tell the Kings to do? 34. Tell of the second voyage of Columbus. Who went with him? What was accomplished on this trip? 35. Were the results of the first two voyages pleasing to the Spaniards? What happened on the third voyage? 36. What was done to Columbus and why? 37. How do the discoveries of Columbus rank? Tell of the explorations of the Portuguese. Who discovered the real route to the Indies? What was his route? 38. What was the reason for the fourth voyage of Columbus? What did he discover this time? 39. When and how did Columbus die? What lesson can we draw from his life and death? 40. What religion inspired the discoveries of Columbus? What motives had he in making these voyages?

41. Who was John Cabot? What king sent him out? What was his aim? Where did he land? What year was this? 42. Who was the son of John Cabot? What did he do? What news did he bring to Europe? What resulted? 43. Who was Amerigo Vespucci? What did he write of? What was the opinion of learned people about the discoveries of Columbus? How did the New World get its name?

44. Name three explorers and tell something about each. Who explored much during the next century? Why did they make these explorations? 45. What can you say about Spanish soldiers and priests? How did the Spaniards treat the natives in general? 46. Who was Las Casas? What did he do? 47. Who was Ponce de Leon and of what was he in search? What land did he discover and in what year? What does Florida mean? 48. Give a short account of Balboa. What ocean did he discover? In what year? 49. What did mariners long hope to have done to the Isthmus of Panama? Has it been done? 50. Tell about Cortez. Whom did he fight? What kind of people were they? What effect had his conquest on Spain? 51. Who was Magellan? For what was he searching? What did he find? What islands did he discover? Where was he killed? What did one of his captains and a ship accomplish? What did this prove? 52. Describe the exploits of Narvaez. What happened to his company? Who was the first bishop in what is now the United States? 53. Tell about the Franciscan missionaries and Father Mark. Who followed them? 54. Where did Coronado penetrate? What did he discover? What happened to the priests of the expedition?

55. Who was De Soto and what did he set out to do? Where did he land? What part of the present United States did he explore? What great river did he discover? Where did he die? Where buried? What became of his followers? 56. When was Protestantism established? What was its effect? Who were the Huguenots? Where did they attempt settlement? What happened? 57. Relate the story of the settlement of St. Augustine. What can you say about this quarrel over territory? 58. Who sent Jesuit missionaries to Florida? What did they do? What other priests followed them? What happened? 59. Where is Santa Fé and what can you tell about it? What missions were established in New Mexico? How did they succeed?

60. What King of France became interested in America? Whom did he send out to explore? What important place did Verrazani first reach? 61. Whom did Francis I later send out? When did Cartier reach America? What did he do there? 62. Describe at some length Cartier's second voyage. What place did he reach and name? What happened on Cartier's last voyage? What happened in Spain for a long time thereafter? 63. What Frenchman later came to America? What city did he found and in what year? What was Champlain called? What was his character? Whom did he bring out to America? What did these priests do? 64. Name three lakes explored by Champlain. What Indians did he fight? What was the effect of this? What other name had the Iroquois Indians?

65. How did the people of Europe think they could reach the Pacific Ocean through America? What was this supposed passage called? 66. Who set out to discover this passage? What did he bring back with him? 67. What two nations became great rivals? Why? Who set out to prey upon the Spaniards? What settlements did he plunder? Where did he go then? What country did he reach and claim for England? By what route did he get back to England? 68. What other European nations wanted a short route to the Indies? Why? Whom did they send out to find a way? What happened? What river did Hudson reach? What did he do? For whom and for what reason did he claim territory? How far did this territory extend? 69. What did Sir Humphry Gilbert do? What became of him? 70. What was the name of Gilbert's half-brother? How did he show his interest in America? What two important staples did he bring back to Europe? What hap-

pened to Raleigh when his servant found him smoking? 71. What were the English claims in America called? Why? 72. Raleigh's first colony having failed, what did he do? Who was born in this second colony? What became of the colonists?

73. What were the only settlements in the present United States in the year 1600? How long was this after America was discovered? What made possible, to a great extent, even these settlements? What nations were anxious to colonize at this time? 74. What was Raleigh's experience as to the cost of planting colonies? How did the English attempt to overcome this? What companies were formed? What territories were assigned to them? 75. What did the Plymouth Company do? What success had the London Company? What colony was founded and where? In what year did this important event take place? Tell at length about the beginnings of Jamestown. 76. Who took charge when things got in a very bad way? What resulted? 77. Tell about Smith's wanderings. Who saved his life and how? 78. What kind were the second lot of colonists? What happened when Smith left? What was the result of the starving struce? How were things remedied? 79. Tell about Argall and Pocahontas. How were things fixed up? 80. What other infamous act did Argall do? What happened to the French missionaries?

81. What is a "community plan"? How did it succeed? How was the situation remedied? 82. What did the colonists find in place of gold? Who started growing tobacco? Did it sell well? 83. What ideas had the colonists about government? What steps did they take? What was the first Assembly called? In what year was it established? What should we remember about it? 84. How was slavery introduced? Who else were held in servitude besides the negroes? What were they called? 85. How did the colonists get wives? What was the state of the colony thereafter? 86. Tell of the Indian outbreak about this time. What action did King James take regarding the London Company? What did the Colony of Virginia then become? Tell about Virginia during the Civil War in England. 87. How did the colonists feel toward Gov. Berkely? Why? What happened? Who led the colonists? 88. Describe at some length the manners and customs of the colonists at that time.

89. What two explorers first visited New York? What company claimed this territory? What action did it take? What did their agents find? 90. Where did the Dutch found a trading post? How was barter carried on? What second trading post did the Dutch establish and where? What were the relations between the Dutch and the Iroquois Indians? What led to this? 91. What other post did the Dutch establish? In what other direction did their trading take place? What did the Dutch call the territory they claimed? 92. How did the trading posts become settlements? What was the name of the first village? How did friendship with the Indians affect the settlement of the interior? 93. Who were the Patroons? What did they do? How did they live? 94. Who was the last of the Dutch Governors? Give a sketch of his character. 95. What European nation now attempted to get a part of America? How and where? What happened to this settlement?

96. Why did the English want to capture New Netherlands? What action did they take? How were her demands received? What year was this? To whom did the King of England give this territory? 97. What did the English call New Amsterdam? Fort Orange? What kind of colony did New York become? What does "proprietary" mean? Who retained possession of this colony? Of the whole coast from Florida to Nova Scotia? 98. Tell briefly of the first three English Governors. Who was Thomas Dongan? What did he do for the colony? What effect had the "Charter of Liberties"? Tell something of Dongan's private life. What happened to New York when its owner became King of England? 99. What happened in England at this time? What effect had this on Catholicity in the colony of New York? What did the Catholic Indians do? What was the Church doing for the Indians in central New York? 100. Give an account at some length of the mode of life of the Dutch in New York. Relate how Catholics fared in New York.

101. What did the Duke of York do with that part of New Netherlands lying between the Hudson and Delaware Rivers? Why was this territory called New Jersey? 102. Where was the first English settlement in New Jersey? How did the settlers feel about paying taxes? Who bought Lord Berkely's share of this colony? What was it then called? How did the Quakers get the rest of New Jersey? 103. Were the new owners satisfied? Who became owner of the colony? What settlers were in the colony at this time? How did they get along with the Indians?

104. In what year was the first settlement made in Massachusetts? Who made it? What does the word "Pilgrim" mean? How did these people get this name? What was their religion? How were they treated in England? Where did they go? How did they like it in Holland? What did they decide to do? In what ship did they sail?

When did they land? What was that part of the coast called? Who gave it this name? 105. What compact did the Pilgrims make? What did it bind them to do? Whom did they elect military leader? 107. How did they fare the first winter? How were the women and children housed? How many Pilgrims died that first winter? Did the others give up in the spring? 108. What happened in the spring? How did the Indians learn to speak English? Who was Massasoit? How did he treat the Pilgrims? 109. How did the friendship of Massasoit affect the other Indians? Who was chief of the unfriendly Indians? What threat did he make and how? Who was second Governor of the colony? What reply did he make to Canonicus? What was its effect? How did the colony grow? How was it governed? 110. What happened in 1628? Name two towns that were established. What kind of laws had the Massachusetts Bay Colony? Did the colony grow? Why had the Puritans left England? What action did they take in New England to preserve their own religious views? 111. Tell of the witchcraft superstitions among the Puritans. 112. What was the character of the Puritans? How did they regard amusements? How did they look upon education? What college was founded?

113. Where did Gorges and Mason acquire land? Where were settlements made? What was the settlement called? How did the settlers get along? What colony did they join? What kind of province did New Hampshire become? 114. Where was Maine and to whom did it belong? Why was it so called? What town was founded? What colony became possessed of Maine and for how long did it hold it? 115. Who first had a foothold in Connecticut? What English people went there? What places did they fortify? What happened in 1636? Describe the pilgrimage of the new settlers to this colony. What towns did they start? What three towns formed a union? When was this? Why did they form such a union? What can you say of this union? On what was it based? 116. Who settled at New Haven? What kind of laws had they? 117. Of what was the Confederation of New England formed? When was it formed and how long did it last? 118. Of what was the Colony of Connecticut formed? How did the king treat this colony? Did the colonists prize their charter? Describe what happened under Sir Edmund Andros. 119. What action did Andros take? What is supposed to have happened to the precious charter? 120. Who was Roger Williams and in what did he disagree with the Puritans? What did he do when ordered arrested? Who helped him? Who joined Williams and what did they do? Why was the first village given its name of Providence? What other towns were started? How were people of different religions treated? How did the settlements become united into a colony?

121. What other religion besides Puritanism was persecuted in England? What prominent man became a Catholic? What request did Lord Baltimore make of his friend the king? What happened to Lord Baltimore? What grant did the second Lord Baltimore receive? What was his grant of territory called? Why? Who led the new settlers to America? 122. Of what was the expedition made of? Where did they land and what did they do? What name was given the new settlement? Relate at length the relations between the new settlers and the Indians. 123. Tell what was Maryland's chief glory. What effect had it? 124. Who was Clayborne? How did he annoy the Maryland colony? 125. What was the Toleration Act? How did those who took advantage of it to escape persecution repay the kindness? How was the "Act" restored? 126. What later happened to the colony? How did its becoming a royal colony effect the Catholics? How did the fifth Lord Baltimore regain the family inheritance? 127. What two towns were founded in the colony which still survives?

128. What two nations settled in the Delaware region? Who captured the territory from the Dutch? Who bought it from the Duke of York and why? 129. How were Pennsylvania and Delaware joined and in what way was their government separate? What city is now the site of the first settlement of the Swedes? After whom was the colony of Delaware called? 130. After whom were the Carolinas called? Who first attempted a settlement? Who followed and how long after? What was the first English colony called? Why? 131. Relate the circumstances of the founding of the Clarendon Colony. 132. What settlement was started in 1670? What city was founded? Whence was it moved? Tell at length about the form of government and what it led to. What did the owners do with the colony? What did the king do with it? 134. Relate the circumstances of the introduction of rice growing. What other products helped the colony along? By whom were the plantations worked? Where did the slaves come from and how were they procured?

135. How were the Quakers treated in England? What interest had William Penn in America? Who was Penn? How did he obtain land in America? Where

did this land lie? What did Penn intend calling it? How did it get its present name? When and by whom was a colony started? 136. What is the meaning of "Philadelphia"? Why was the first town started by the Quakers so called? Tell of the relations between Penn and the Indians. How was it recorded? Was it kept? How did the colony and city get along? 137. Who surveyed the boundary line between Pennsylvania and Maryland? What was the line called? What did it separate in later days? 138. How did Penn treat other religions than his own? What happened to Catholics later on? 139. For whom was Georgia named? By whom was it founded? Who came to settle there? What kind of people came later? 140. Give name and location of first town. What manufacture was carried on? How did Georgia treat the religions?

141. What can you say of the Catholic missionaries? 142. What debt does our country owe these priests? What did Bancroft say of them? 143. Among whom did Father Brebœuf and his companions work? Relate the story of the Indians and the clock. 144. Tell of the journey of Father Jogues and what resulted at its end. 145. What Indians later captured Father Jogues? How did they treat him? 146. Who ransomed the Jesuit? What did Father Jogues do? How did he die? 147. Tell of some other brave missionaries. How were Brebœuf and Lalemant martyred? 148. What happened when peace came between the Hurons and Iroquois? What was discovered by the priests? Near what present city did all this take place? What great Indian chief restored peace?

149. Continue the story of the missionaries who took charge of the station at Mackinaw. Of what river did the Indians speak? 150. What did Marquette determine to do and whom did he take with him? Tell of their journey. 151. What river did the explorers reach and what did Marquette call it? Describe the exploration of the Mississippi and the visit to the Illinois Indians. 152. How far did the explorers go? What did they learn of the river's course there? 153. Tell of the return trip and what Joliet and Marquette did. 154. How was Marquette made happy? What did he do? Tell of his return and death.

155. Relate how La Salle reached Green Bay. Who made up the company and what did they do on reaching Lake Michigan? To what did they come? How did they reach the Illinois River? Tell of their trip down the Mississippi. 156. Describe the events of trip to Gulf of Mexico. What territory did La Salle claim? What did he call it and for whom? 157. What eventually happened to La Salle? What was his character? 158. What towns did the French erect in Louisiana territory? What fort was built to command the Great Lakes? 159. At end of colonization period what territory did England hold in America? France? Spain?

160. How did the Connecticut River settlement get along with the Indians? What war took place and what happened? 161. What was the result of the Pequot War? 162. What happened when the friendly chief, Massasoit, died? Why did Philip make war on the English? 163. Describe the swamp fight. What tribe did it wipe out? 164. Mention three Indian wars in the South. Why did they happen? How did they come out?

165. What king did the English dethrone and whom did they put in his place? What was the result? What was the war known as? How did the Indians take sides? 166. Tell of two massacres by the French and Indians. 167. What happened at Lachine? What was the result of this war? 168. Tell briefly some of the events of Queen Ann's War in the South. 169. What happened in the North in this war? How long did the war last? What was the outcome of it? 170. Who were the Abnaki? What happened to them? 171. What was the principal event of King George's War? 172. What was the net result of the three colonial wars? Name these wars.

173. What vast territory was in dispute between the French and English? On what was the French claim founded? The English? 174. Describe at some length the French method of colonization. 175. Describe at some length the English method of colonization. 176. What was the result of these different methods? 177. What company received a grant of land in America? Where? Who occupied this territory? 178. What young man lived in Virginia at this time? When was he born? Tell something of his early life. What did he do when he grew up? Describe his looks. 179. On what mission was Washington sent? What was the reply of the French commander? 180. Tell about Washington's return from the Ohio district. What did Washington urge upon the English colonists? Why?

181. What was the name of the last of the Colonial wars? How did it start? What happened to Washington? 182. What was the purpose of the Albany Convention? What did Franklin propose? Why did the colonists object? Why did

the English government object? What did Franklin think of it then? What good did the Albany Convention accomplish? 183. By what other name was the French and Indian War called? What sides did the Indians take? What fort did the English aim to take? Who commanded the English? What American went on the expedition? What difference of opinion was there between Braddock and Washington? 184. How did the English troops act? What did the French do? What resulted? 185. What people inhabited Acadia? What did the English do to them? Describe the fate of the Acadians. What poem describes this event? 186. What great commander had the French? What happened at Fort William Henry? 187. Who was William Pitt? What did he do for the colonies? What events followed? 188. Where did the English aim the final blow? Who led them? Describe the stronghold of Quebec. 189. Tell of gaining the heights of Quebec and the battle that followed. Who fell in this battle? 190. What changes in territory followed the French and Indian War? 191. How did the Indians regard their new rulers, the English? Who led the Indians? What happened in the Indian uprising? 192. Why did Englishmen come to America? How did they regard England? What effect had the French and Indian War on the American colonists? 193. How did the colonists regard laws passed in England at this time? What was the Navigation Act? How did it hurt the colonists? 194. What were the Acts of Trade? How did they affect colonial wool, for instance? Other products? Whom did these laws hurt? Whom did they favor? 195. Who became king of England? What did he want the colonies to do? What position did the colonists take in regard to taxes? What famous slogan did they adopt? Who did the colonists think should do the taxing? 196. What was the Stamp Act? What effect had it on the colonists? What did they do? What young Virginian came to the front at this time? 197. What action was taken by the English Government? What rights did Parliament still claim? What other act was passed? What did it force the colonists to do? 198. Describe the Boston massacre. 199. What taxation did Parliament retain? What was the American viewpoint as to this or any other tax laid by Parliament? 200. What happened when tea cargoes arrived? Describe the Boston Tea Party. What action did the English take? Who helped Boston? 201. What was the Quebec Act? Why was it passed? Why did the colonists resent it? 202. What were these new laws called? What action did the colonies take? What did the First Congress do? Who went to it? 203. What general commanded the British at Boston? What did he do? Who were the "Minute Men"? What preparations did the Americans make? 204. Who alarmed the countryside? 205. How did he know the British were moving? What were the British after? What happened at Lexington? 206. What happened at Concord? What followed when news of the fight spread? How were the British saved? 206. Describe the effects of Lexington and Concord. 207. Who were the "Green Mountain Boys"? Who led them? What did they do? 208. Tell something about Bunker Hill. What action did the British take? 209. Describe the Battle of Bunker Hill. Who finally won? 210. What effect had this battle? 211. What happened between the Second Continental Congress and the English King? What did Congress do then? Who became commander-in-chief? 212. What did Washington say when told of Bunker Hill? What did he do? 213. What happened in the late summer of 1775? Name the American commander of the armies invading Canada. Tell of the routes taken by them. How many men had they? 214. What was the result of the attack on Quebec? 215. What Indians agreed to help Washington? Tell something more about them. 216. Who were sent to Canada to ask the French Canadians to join the colonists? Why did these people refuse? 217. What did Washington do when snow came? Then what happened? What difference did the British see between the men on Bunker Hill and those on Dorchester Heights? What word did Washington send to General Howe? Who were the Tories? What did Tories and British do? 218. Describe the attack of the British on the fort guarding Charlestown. How did the Americans defend it? Did they succeed? What was the fort named? Tell of a brave action during the fight. 219. What had become the general feeling of the people at this time? Tell about those who were of the opposite opinion. 220. What resolution was passed by Congress? Give the quotation from it as nearly as possible. What great event followed? Who was the author of the Declaration of Independence? When was it adopted? How received? 221. Where did England try to get men for her army? Where did she finally get them? What were their troops called? How many came? Who stopped the practice? How did the Catholic Princes of Germany look on this practice? 222. Why was New York

City hard for the Americans to hold? What action did some patriots want to take? What did Washington do? 223. Where did the British land? What was the outcome of the battle of Long Island? How did Washington save his army? What happened to New York? 224. Who was Nathan Hale? What did he attempt to do? What happened to him? What were his immortal words? 225. Describe the retreat across New Jersey. Was Washington able to hold all his army together?

226. Describe the American army at the end of 1776. What did the British generals do? Who were left in Trenton? What happened there on Christmas night? 227. What action did Washington take? What river did he cross? What battle was fought and won? Describe it. What did the historian, Bancroft, say of this battle? 228. What did the English do after Trenton? 229. How did Washington fool Cornwallis? What battle did he gain? How did Washington act in this battle? 230. What French nobleman came to help America? Name two German barons who also came. What two Poles came? Why did these men come to fight for America?

231. What military plan did the British make? What general set out from Canada? Describe the opposition of the Americans to Burgoyne. 232. Why did the British want to take Bennington, Vermont? Who opposed them? What did he say? Who won the battle?

233. What was Burgoyne's condition at Saratoga? Who got the American forces ready? Who commanded them? Who led the American's attack? What help had Burgoyne expected? How was it to be given? What was the outcome of the Battle of Saratoga? What can you say of the effect of this battle? 234. Describe General Howe's journeyings before the attack on Philadelphia. What happened at Brandywine? What followed? 235. Describe the Battle of Germantown. 236. How had France acted towards America up to this time? What happened after Burgoyne surrendered? What can you say of the alliance? 237. Describe at some length the sufferings of the Americans at Valley Forge. In what year was this? How did the British live that year? 238. What effect had the news of the French alliance? Describe the evacuation of Philadelphia. 239. Describe the Battle of Monmouth. Who was Molly Pitcher? What can you say of General Charles Lee?

240. Who explored Kentucky? What is Boone said to have exclaimed? Tell something of Robertson and Sevier. What happened in the Tennessee-Kentucky region in the second year of the Revolution? 241. Who was George Rogers Clark? Tell of his operations. 242. What people dwelt largely in the Kaskaskia region? Who was their Vicar-General? Explain at length what Father Gibault did? 243. Tell of the operations of General Hamilton against Clark. What was the final outcome? 244. Explain in detail what might have happened to this territory had not Clark, helped by Father Gibault, succeeded. What states were affected by Clark's victories?

245. What are "privateers"? 246. Describe the first naval victory of the Americans. Who commanded? What did he call himself? Why is Barry rightly called "the Father of the American navy"? 247. Who was John Paul Jones? Describe one of his naval victories and tell what he said. How did these naval victories affect the young nation? 248. Tell something of Benedict Arnold. What did he attempt to do? What reward was he to get? 249. What was Major André's mission? Tell of his journey and its outcome. What happened to André? 250. What did Arnold do with the British? What kind of an end had he? Describe the monument on the battlefield of Saratoga.

251. Why did General Clinton send an army south? What city was early taken and why? What success had the Americans in trying to retake Savannah? Who fell there? 252. To whom did Charleston, South Carolina, fall? What American general was captured? What did the British do then? 253. What American general now took command? What position did he covet? What happened at the Battle of Camden? 254. What did the Tories do? Who led them? Who opposed them? What happened at King's Mountain? 255. What can you say of General Greene? What did he do on taking command? Who was the "Swamp Fox"? 256. Who was Morgan? What did he do to the British at the Battle of Cowpens? What did Cornwallis and Greene do? 257. Describe the Battle of Guilford Court House. What did Cornwallis decide to do then? Where did he go? 258. What two foreigners, commanding American troops, opposed Cornwallis in Virginia? Where did Cornwallis go? What happened to him? 259. What action did Washington take? What French general aided him? What did the combined armies do? What action did the French fleet take? 260. What forced

Cornwallis to surrender? What happened after the surrender? 261. What was the effect of Yorktown in America? In England? Who came into power there? What was the result? In what year was the peace treaty signed? How long after Yorktown was this? 262. What did the treaty of peace acknowledge? What territory did the young nation occupy? What happened to Florida?

263. How did Catholics act in the Revolution? What can you say of the aid of Catholic France? 264. Name the Catholic signers of the Declaration of Independence. Mention some Catholic officers. What was "Congress' Own"? Tell of the "Te Deum" in Philadelphia after the war. 265. What did Washington say in reply to the address of the Catholics? 266. How was the nation governed from the time of Yorktown till Washington became President? 267. Who claimed ownership of the territory across the mountains between the Ohio River and Great Lakes? To whom were these claims turned over? What was the territory called? 268. What was the "Ordinance of 1787"? What did it provide for? What states were carved out of the Northwest Territory?

269. Explain the relations between the states and Congress under the Articles of Confederation. What came to act as a bond between the states? Why? 270. What became the feeling regarding a stronger union and government? What did Washington say and why? 271. Tell of the meeting of the Constitutional Convention. What resulted? What difficulties arose? 272. Mention some prominent men who attended. 273. What did Washington say at the convention? What three positions were held by Washington? Why is his work in the Constitutional Convention considered of such great importance? 274. Upon what conditions was the new Constitution to become binding? When did the Constitution go into effect? What two great states refused to ratify but finally came in? 275. What form of government did the Constitution establish between the states? What three branches of the government are there? Explain the Executive branch. The Legislative. The Judicial.

276. How was a President chosen? Who became first President of the United States? When and where was he inaugurated? 277. Who was the first Catholic bishop in the United States? 278. What was Washington's idea about political parties? Whom did he appoint Secretary of State? Secretary of the Treasury? What was Hamilton's political party and ideas? Jefferson's? 279. What can you say of the finances of the country? What action was taken in regard to the debts? Who insisted on this payment? 280. How was money raised? What was done with it? Who was Vice-President during Washington's second term? 281. What held back the production of cotton? How was this overcome? Who invented the cotton-gin? What immediate effect had the invention of the cotton-gin? What far-off effect had it? 282. Describe conditions in the Northwest Territory. What general was sent against the Indians? In what battle were they defeated? 283. How did the original thirteen states become complete again? What was the first new state admitted to the Union? What other states claimed this territory? What two other states were admitted during the eighteenth century? 284. How did the people look on Washington towards the end of his administration? What did he decide to do? 285. What do Americans think of Washington's farewell address? What did he urge upon his countrymen?

286. Describe conditions in Europe at this time. What position did the Federalist party take? What did the Republicans want us to do? Who was leader of the Federalists? Who led the Republicans? Who was elected second President? 287. What happened to Adams' envoys to France? What reply did Pinckney make to the French Revolutionists? How did Adams' message to Congress, concerning these affairs, become known as the X. Y. Z. Papers? 288. Tell about our brief conflict with France. How was war averted? 289. What do you mean by the "Alien Law"? What was the "Sedition Law"? What was the general opinion about them? What action did Kentucky and Virginia take? What is meant by "states' rights"? 290. When did Washington die? Where was he buried? What has he been called?

291. How did the election of 1800 result? How was a President elected? Who was he? Where was the Capital moved to? Why? In what district is the capital located? 292. What country got possession of Louisiana territory? How did Louisiana affect navigation of Mississippi River? What did America think of this? What was done? 293. What did Jefferson's commissioners propose to buy? What did they actually purchase? For what sum? What were Napoleon's two ideas in selling Louisiana? What effect had this purchase? 294. What state was admitted in 1802? In what Territory was it located? Why was Jefferson re-elected? What two men

fought a duel and who was killed? 295. Why was the Lewis and Clark Expedition sent out? Where did it go and by what route? 296. Who discovered and named the Columbia River? Did the Louisiana Purchase cover this region? Who claimed it for the United States? Who re-affirmed this claim? 297. What was going on in Europe? How did American shipping profit? What action did England take? What did this nation claim about seamen? What did France do? 298. What position did Jefferson take? Why did he think stopping our shipping would remedy matters? 299. What did the Embargo Act do? What result had it? How did it affect England and France? What other act took its place? What did the Non-Intercourse Act forbid? 300. How were domestic affairs going on at this time? What invention was made about this time? 301. Who invented the first practical steamboat? When? What was it called? How did it succeed? 302. What resulted from the first successful steamboat? 303. Tell something of the advance of Catholicity during these years.

304. Who succeeded Jefferson? What was the state of the country then? 305. What caused the War of 1812? What naval action hastened it? 306. What point was aimed at by the Americans? What did Hull do at Detroit? 307. Tell of two other attempts against Canada. 308. Describe the fight between the *Constitution* and the *Guerriere*. What was the *Constitution* called? 309. Tell of two other naval victories. Mention the names of two American commanders. 310. Who commanded the Americans on Lake Erie? How was the battle won? Tell of Perry's report. 311. Describe the battle of the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*. 312. Who commanded the "Army of the West"? What event led Harrison to attack? What battle was fought and who won? What resulted? 313. What Indian massacre occurred in the South? Who avenged it and how? 314. What happened at Lundy's Lane? 315. Tell of the land and naval battle of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain. What British plan did they foil? 316. Describe the British ravages along the coast. What happened to the City of Washington? 317. Who wrote the "Star Spangled Banner"? Tell of the circumstances under which it was written. 318. When and where was the treaty of peace signed? What happened after this? 319. Who commanded at New Orleans? Describe the Battle of New Orleans. 320. What did the War of 1812 show the world? What happened to manufacturing during this time? What, then, was the most important result of the war?

321. What followed the War of 1812? What President was elected? What was Monroe's policy? 322. Mention some new states admitted then. 323. Why was a cross-country road needed? How was this need filled? What can you say about the Cumberland Road? 324. What Indians attacked our southern borders from Spanish Florida? What did General Jackson do? 325. How did we get Florida? How much did it cost? When was this? 326. What did the North and South think about slavery? What brought the question up at this time? Who proposed a solution? 327. What was Clay's plan about Maine and Missouri? How was the future of slavery decided by the Missouri Compromise? 328. What had happened in South America? 329. What nations composed the "Holy Alliance"? How did Monroe fear this would affect America? 330. What was Monroe's policy toward other American countries called? Mention the three principal points of the "Monroe Doctrine." 331. What did the "Monroe Doctrine" accomplish? 332. Describe Lafayette's visit to America in 1824. 333. How was John Quincy Adams elected president? Who was he? 334. Describe at some length the difficulties of bringing products to market from the territory west of the Alleghenies? 335. What almost water-level route led from New York City to the Great Lakes? Who proposed to build a canal across this state? How long did it take to build the Erie Canal? In what year was it finished? 336. How did the Erie Canal succeed? What effect had it? What other canal was proposed? 337. Why was the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad started? What was it the forerunner of? 338. What two men died on the fiftieth anniversary of the Declaration of Independence? 339. What is a tariff? Why are tariffs imposed? What was the Tariff of 1828? How did the country receive it?

340. Who became President at this time? What was the South producing at this time? What viewpoint had they in the tariff? 341. What action did South Carolina take? What two men debated the right of South Carolina to nullify a law of Congress? What action did Jackson later take toward South Carolina? 342. How did Henry Clay adjust the difficulty? What did he say when told his action might bar him from the Presidency? 343. What were Abolition Societies? Why did the North and South drift apart? 344. What did Jackson do to the Bank

of the United States? What followed his action? 345. What difference arose between the government and the Indians? 346. What Indian wars occurred in Jackson's time? How did they result?

348. Who followed Jackson as President? What was Van Buren's political viewpoint? What followed the deposit of government money in local banks? 349. What order did Jackson issue? How did this result in Van Buren's time? 350. What can you say about immigration? 351. What feeling was there against Catholics following the increase in immigration? How did it manifest itself?

352. What can you say of President Harrison's term? Who succeeded him? 353. Why did many Americans enter Texas? What did the Mexican government do regarding slavery? What battle gave Texas independence? 354. Relate the circumstances of the admission of Texas to the Union. 355. Who invented the telegraph? When was the first message sent? Between what places? What was this message?

356. Who succeeded Tyler as President? 357. What action did Polk take regarding the disputed boundary between Texas and Mexico? What resulted? What action did Congress take? 358. What territory was taken by the first army? What did General Kearney then set out to do? 359. Who first raised the American flag over California? What did Colonel Fremont do? What resulted from these actions? 360. Who commanded the second army? What did it do? 361. Tell why the Battle of Buena Vista was fought? What was its result? 362. Who commanded the third army? 363. Where did it land? What did it aim to capture? 363. What happened at Cerra Gordo? 364. Tell about the capture of Mexico City. 365. What territory was ceded to the United States when peace came? What was the extent of the United States then? 366. Tell something of the Catholicity of this region. 367. Tell about the Missions in California. How did the Franciscans succeed? 368. Describe the state of the Missions in their prime. What happened to them later?

369. What two nations claimed the Oregon territory? What compromise was reached? 370. Who was Father de Smet? Where did he labor? What success had he? 371. How was the balance between the free and slave states maintained? 372. Where was gold discovered in 1848? What resulted? 373. How did the "Forty-niners" reach California? Did the population of California increase rapidly? 374. How had the country progressed in internal affairs? What happened in Ireland about this time? What action was taken in 1846 by the Sixth Council of Baltimore?

375. Who became President in 1849? What question was raised by California's request for admission? 377. Who again endeavored to compromise the dispute? What bill was introduced? 378. What did the Omnibus Bill provide regarding California's admission? About other states to be carved out of the Mexican cession? About fugitive slaves? About the slave trade in District of Columbia? 379. What part of this bill provoked the North? What resulted? What three great statesmen passed away at this time? 380. Tell something about "Uncle Tom's Cabin."

381. Who now became President? 382. What was the Gadsden Purchase? 383. What did the Kansas-Nebraska Bill aim to do? 384. What do you mean by "Squatter Sovereignty"? 385. What brought on civil war in Kansas? Was it serious? 386. Who were the "Know Nothings"? What did they oppose? Why were they so called? How did this party succeed? 387. Mention some new states admitted.

388. What party succeeded the Whigs? Who was elected President? 389. What did the South claim about their slaves? By what decision was this upheld by the Supreme Court? How was this received in the North? 390. Tell something about Abraham Lincoln? With whom did he enter a series of debates? 391. What argument did Douglas make? How was this received in the South? What consequences had this? 392. Who was John Brown? What did he do? What happened to him? 393. What Republican ran for President in 1860? What was the belief of the Northern Democrats? Whom did they nominate? 394. What threat did four Southern states make? Who was elected? 395. When did secession commence? What was the feeling in the South as regards the right to secede? What states seceded from the Union at first? 396. What position had President Buchanan taken? What had happened to the army and navy? What did North Carolina do? 397. What happened to much United States government property? What did the seven seceding states form?

398. Where was Fort Sumter? What happened there after Lincoln was sworn

in as President? Who commanded the fort? What action had President Buchanan taken. 399. What did Lincoln determine to do? How did the Confederates get ahead of him? What was the outcome of the bombardment of Sumter? 400. Describe the effect, North and South, of the firing on Sumter. What loss did the North suffer? What city became the capital of the Confederate States? 401. What happened in the border states? What action was taken regarding the loyal part of Virginia? 402. What great advantage had the North? What did this permit? 403. What was the condition regarding manufacturing? How did the North keep supplies from the South? What about money? 404. What first great advantage had the South? Tell of another Southern advantage? Why did Southerners make good soldiers? 405. To sum up: What three advantages had the North? How did the South offset them?

406. Who had been in command of the Union army? What regiment first went to Washington? How was first blood of the Civil War shed? 407. What was the general cry at this time? What advance took place? What battle followed? How did "Stonewall" Jackson get his name? What broke the Union line? What followed? 408. What did Bull Run teach the North? What did Congress do? Who was placed in command? 409. Why was a blockade ordered? What do you mean by a blockade? How was it carried out? 410. Who went to Europe to represent the Union? 411. Give a summary of the first year of the war.

412. What two Confederate strongholds were there in the West? Where? How were these forts taken? 413. Describe the fight at Shiloh. What happened at Corinth? What Union victories took place along the Mississippi River? 414. What city did Farragut attack? How was the attack made? What was the outcome? 415. What did Farragut do after New Orleans? What two points were held by the Confederates? Why were they important? 416. Why was the *Merrimac* sunk and by whom? What did the Confederates do to her? 417. Describe the fight between the iron-clad *Merrimac* and the wooden *Cumberland*. What happened to the *Congress*? 418. What was the *Monitor* called? Describe this vessel. 419. Describe the first battle of iron-clads. How did it end? 420. Why may this battle be said to have saved the Union?

421. Where did McClellan take his army? What was the army called? What engagements took place on the "peninsula"? 422. Who took command of the Confederates at "Fair Oaks"? Who was Lee? 423. Tell about the Peninsular Campaign. 424. What happened at Cedar Mountain? At the Second Bull Run? 425. What did Jackson capture? What was the outcome of Antietam? Who were the two commanders there? 426. Why did McClellan lose his command? Where did Burnside attack? Describe this battle. What about the "Irish Brigade"? 427. What did Lincoln decide to do? Why? What was England's position? How would abolishing slavery affect this? What did the Emancipation Proclamation do? 428. What happened at Iuka and Corinth? 429. Give a summary of the second year of the war.

430. What happened January 1st, 1863? 431. Who now commanded the Union army? Describe the condition of Lee's army. What did Hooker do? 432. What action did Lee take? When did "Stonewall" Jackson attack? What resulted? 433. Why was the Union army defeated? How was Jackson killed? 434. What advance did Lee make? Who opposed him? When did the armies meet? What ridges did each army occupy? How did the battle go for the first two days? 435. Describe fully Pickett's charge. 436. How did the battle end? Where did Lee go? What losses were there at Gettysburg? 437. What happened the day after Gettysburg? How did Grant attack at Vicksburg? 438. How did the siege of Vicksburg turn out? What happened at Port Hudson? What effect had these victories?

439. Who won the Battle of Chickamauga? What was Gen. Thomas called? Why? Where did Rosecrans go? 440. Describe the Battle of Lookout Mountain. What resulted? 441. What Address did Lincoln make? Quote the words of his great hope. 442. Give a summary of events of the third year of the War.

443. What two Confederate armies were left? What two Union generals opposed them? 444. Describe Sherman's campaign. How was he opposed? 445. How did Sherman gain Atlanta? What happened to Hood's army? 446. Describe Sherman's "March to the Sea." What city did he capture? 447. Describe the Battle of the Wilderness. What generals fought each other? 448. Tell of three costly victories of Grant's. 449. Whom did Lee send against Washington? Who opposed him? What happened? 450. Tell all about Sheridan's Ride. 451. What did Sheridan do in the Shenandoah Valley? 451. Tell about the Confederate Privateers. What did

England do in regard to them? 452. Tell all about the fight between the *Kearsage* and the *Alabama*. 453. What did Farragut do at Mobile? What was the result? 454. Give a summary of the fourth year of the War.

455. What was the condition of the South? What did Sherman do? What victory did he gain? What happened to Richmond? 456. When and where did Lee surrender? What was the condition of his army? How did Grant treat the Confederates? What were the final events of the War? 457. What loss did the War cause in men and money? What two great results came of the Civil War? How does the old Confederacy regard the Union to-day? 458. Tell of the murder of Lincoln. When and where did it happen? Who committed it? 459. Give a brief description of the part played by Catholics in the Civil War.

460. Who succeeded to Lincoln's place as President? Describe at some length the condition of the South. Why could not Johnson help? Who could have helped? 461. Why was Nevada admitted to the Union? What did the Thirteenth Amendment do? How did it differ from the Emancipation Proclamation? 462. Was Johnson willing to trust the Southerners to treat the negro fairly? How did Congress act? 463. What is the Fourteenth Amendment? 464. What is the Fifteenth Amendment? 465. What did the "ironclad oath" call for? Who were the "carpet-baggers"? What did they do? 466. Tell about the struggle between Johnson and Congress. 467. What action did Congress take against the President? How did the trial result? What would have happened had Johnson been found guilty? 468. What happened Christmas Day, 1868? 469. What happened in Mexico while the states were at war? Who became emperor there? Who made him this? Why did we protest? What happened to Maximilian? 470. How did the country progress after the War? What large territory was purchased in 1867? From whom was Alaska bought? How much was paid? What minerals have been found there? 471. Who led the project to lay a telegraph cable across the Atlantic? What happened to the first one? The second? What ship succeeded in laying a perfect cable?

472. Who was elected President in 1867? What happened to the population of America in the ten years from 1860 to 1870? To manufactures? How did the North progress during the War? The South? 473. What railroad was now being built? What was it to connect? When and where was it completed? 474. Mention two disastrous fires that took place about the same time. 475. Who suffered loss from the Confederate privateer *Alabama*? What did they do? What argument had they? 476. What action did Grant take? How did England take this? How was the matter settled? 477. What followed the Civil War in business affairs? What followed this extensive speculation? 478. Who was the first American Cardinal? 479. How was the hundredth birthday of the country celebrated? What date was that? 480. What did President Grant's Commission say about the way the white men treated the Indians? What happened to Gen. Custer and his men? 481. What instrument was first shown during the Centennial Exposition? Who invented the telephone?

482. Tell about the election of 1876. What states' votes were disputed? 483. Of whom was the Electoral Commission composed? How did they decide the question? 484. What action did Hayes take toward the South? What resulted? 485. What strikes took place at that time? What damage resulted? 486. Tell about Yellow Fever in the South. How did the North act in the emergency?

487. Who was elected President in 1879? What happened to President Garfield? 488. How long did the President linger? Who succeeded him? 489. How did American labor look on the Chinese immigrants? How was the matter adjusted? 490. What unfair actions does the Alien Contract Labor Law prohibit? 491. What President started the practice of changing government office holders? Was the new system a good one? What attempt was made to reform this abuse? 492. What political party was successful in 1884? What did this victory prove?

493. What do you mean by the Presidential Succession Law? 494. What is the object of the Electoral Count Law? 495. What power is given the Interstate Commerce Commission? What unfair practice was prohibited? 496. What was Cleveland's viewpoint on the tariff? Why did the Republicans oppose him? Who was elected President?

497. What event was celebrated early in Harrison's administration? 498. How had the country expanded during these hundred years? The population? What wars had been fought? In what other ways had America progressed? 499. Tell about the Oklahoma rush. What about the City of Guthrie? 500. What was happening in the West? How many new states were admitted? 501. Explain about the disappearance of the frontier. 502. What tariff bill was passed? What followed this?

503. Who succeeded Harrison? What new political party was formed? 504.

Tell about the World's Fair at Chicago and some incidents connected with it. 505. What happened in Hawaii about this time? What did Cleveland do? What followed as to the government of the islands? How are these islands situated? 506. What did the Sherman Silver Bill call for? Explain how and why the gold was taken from the Treasury. 507. What did Cleveland do? Tell about the great panic of this time. 508. What was going on in Venezuela? What position did England take? 509. What was the gist of President Cleveland's Venezuelan Message? What did England do? 510. Tell of the two most important applications of the Monroe Doctrine? 511. What action on the Tariff was taken?

512. What question divided the opinion of the country at this time? Whom did the Democrats nominate? How did he get the nomination? Who was the Republican nominee? 513. Who believed in McKinley and "gold"? Who supported Bryan and "silver"? Who won? 514. What action was taken on the Tariff? What resulted? 515. Describe conditions in Cuba at this time. What did Gen. Weyler do? What did Americans think of this treatment of Cubans? 516. What happened to the battleship *Maine*? How did Americans take this catastrophe?

517. What action did Congress take regarding Cuba? What further action did Congress take? What pledge was made? 518. Describe Dewey's victory at Manila. Where is Manila? 519. Tell about the Spanish armored cruisers. 520. Describe the naval Battle of Santiago. 521. What happened at San Juan Hill? What Cuban city was captured by the Americans? What happened in Porto Rico? By whom was the City of Manila taken? 522. What were the terms of peace regarding Cuba? What island came into possession of the U. S.? 523. How did the Spanish War affect the feeling between North and South? How did it affect America as a world power? Why? What effect had it on Spain? 524. Describe conditions in the Philippines. How long did fighting last? How did it come out? 525. Tell about the election of 1900. 526. What practice had grown up in business? Why was this done? How did it result? 527. What large corporation was formed? In what other lines were large companies formed? What were they called? What did many people think of them? 528. Tell all about the Pan-American Exposition. What does "pan" mean?

529. How and where was President McKinley assassinated? Who succeeded him? 530. What event brought up the oft-discussed question of building a canal across the Isthmus of Panama? Tell about this trip of the *Oregon*. How would a canal affect ocean shipping? 531. Who started the Panama Canal? What did the U. S. government do? Who undertook the job of building the canal? Tell about completing the job. 532. Who was elected in 1904? 533. What two kinds of combinations opposed one another? What was the object of the Sherman Anti-Trust Law? What action did Roosevelt take? 534. How were business methods reformed? 535. What event was celebrated by the World's Fair at St. Louis, 1903? 536. What event did the Portland Fair of 1904 celebrate? What did the Norfolk Fair celebrate? 537. Tell about the San Francisco earthquake and fire. How did this city recover? What was celebrated there in 1915? 538. What happened in business in 1907?

539. Who ran for President and who was elected in 1908? 540. What was done in business affairs by Taft? 541. What can you say about the appointment of Edward D. White as Chief Justice of the U. S.? 542. Tell something about the new states admitted at this time. 543. What three American Cardinals were appointed?

544. Describe the election of 1912. Who was elected? 545. What was done to the Tariff? 546. What is the Sixteenth Amendment? Why was it passed? 547. What is the Seventeenth Amendment? 548. How was the banking system of the country reformed? 549. Mention some important public and private enterprises of this time. 550. What new laws were passed to curb the "trusts"? 551. Tell about the purchase of the Virgin Islands. 552. Give a brief account of affairs in Mexico and tell what action we took. 553. Who was Villa? Who pursued him?

544. Describe the election of 1912. Who was elected? 545. What was done to Europe? What are the principal Latin nations of Europe? Teutonic? Slav? 555. Of what nations did Germany make an alliance? What was it called? How strong was it? What did the other group of nations do? What nations were these? 556. What small Slavic states did Austria annex? What nation did this displease? Why? What other nation was offended? 557. Tell of the murder of Archduke Francis Ferdinand. 558. What did Austria do? What nation consulted? What did the Austrian and German rulers know to be the facts? What did Serbia do? 559. What action did Russia take? What did Germany do? What was the German plan of war? What difficulty was there in this plan? 560. Which was the easy path into France? Why was this route supposed to be barred? What did Germany

do? 561. What offer did Germany make Belgium? Who refused the offer? What other nation came into the war? Why did England come in? How did the first fighting turn out? 562. How did General Joffre try to stop the German advance? What did the German army do? Who cut through their line? What happened? What was this battle called? 563. Tell something about trench warfare. Who first used poison gas? 564. What happened to the Russian armies? What two nations joined the Teutonic nations in 1915? 565. Tell about the fighting at Verdun. What was the result of the naval Battle of Jutland? What two nations joined the "Allies" in 1917?

566. What action was taken by President Wilson when war broke out? How did Americans feel about the war? What commenced to turn American sympathy to the Allies? 567. What did the Germans do with their submarines? What great ship was sunk? What can you say about this? 568. What did the U. S. do in regard to the *Lusitania*? What happened when other ships were sunk? What promise did Germany make? 569. Tell about the election of 1916. 570. What announcement did Germany make early in 1917? What other happening tried our patience? 571. What justification had we for entering the war? What feeling had spread over the land? What words did President Wilson use? When did we declare war? 572. How were we prepared for war? Who was sent to France? What else was done? 573. What act did Congress pass? What did it do? What further preparations were made? 574. What did we do during the rest of 1917? What happened in Russia? Who took control? What happened in Italy? 575. Tell what the submarines did. How were they coped with? 576. What did our navy do? 577. What did Germany do early in 1918? Tell about the Battle of Picardy. Where was the second drive made? What resulted from the three other drives? How did things look for the Allies? What two favorable events took place?

579. What had American effort amounted to up to this time? What was done when the danger was realized? Name two actions in which Americans first took part. 580. Where were the Americans thrown in to stop a German drive? Who first went into action then? Of what was the Second Division composed? What happened when the Germans advanced? 581. Describe the fight in Belleau Wood. What was its outcome? 582. Describe in some detail the effect of these actions. 583. Tell about the German fifth drive, called the Second Battle of the Marne? What troops of ours took part? 584. What action did Foch take now? What troops held the place of honor? What happened to the Germans? Mention others of our troops to take part. How did the action end? 585. How many Americans were now in France? What did Foch do? Who fought alongside the British? How did the Allies make out? 586. With whom had the Americans fought all this time? What was "St. Mihiel"? What happened there in September, 1918? 587. What had been the intention regarding the American Army after St. Mihiel? What did Foch make up his mind to do? Why? 588. Tell about the great Meuse-Argonne attack in some detail. What did Pershing say about its effect? 589. What was now happening on other fronts? What happened on the Hindenburg Line? What did Foch do? 590. What happened in Palestine? In Bulgaria? 591. How did Bulgaria's surrender affect Austria? Tell of the fighting between Italy and Austria. What was the outcome?

592. Why did Germany turn to President Wilson for peace terms? What were Wilson's terms called? What answer to Germany did Wilson make? 593. What happened in the German fleet? What did the Kaiser do? When was an armistice declared? 594. What caused Germany to lose the war? What other things contributed to this? 595. Where was the Peace Conference held? Who represented America at it? What idea had Wilson about peace? What did he urge? 596. Tell about what the people at home did while our boys were fighting in France? 597. Name some welfare organizations. 598. Tell at some length about our manufacturing efforts to supply the front. 599. How many fighters had we at the end of the war? What were our losses?

600. Mention some foreigners whom Catholics may well be proud of. 601. Tell about Marshal Foch as a Catholic. 602. Tell something further about Catholics in the war. 603. What position did the Pope take? 604. What proportion of our army was Catholic? Of the navy? Of the marine corps? 605. Mention some prominent American Catholics in the war. 606. Tell about the work of the Knights of Columbus.

607. Who died early in 1917? What is thought of Roosevelt? 608. What league did the Treaty of Peace establish? How did the U. S. Senate look on this League of Nations? 608. Why was the League opposed in the Senate? 609. What happened to Wilson? 610. What action was taken on the League by the Senate? When

PREPARATORY UNITED STATES HISTORY

did we ratify peace with Germany? 611. What made business very good in America? What course did prices take? Why? 612. Tell about the course of business until 1920? What happened then? 613. What is the Eighteenth Amendment? The Nineteenth?

614. Tell about the election of 1920. Who became President? 615. What did the Census of 1920 show? 616. What alliance was there between England and Japan? What was America doing with her navy? 617. What conference took place? What resulted? 618. What association did the war veterans form? Tell about the "unknown" soldier. 619. What kind of people were coming here from Europe? What was done about it? 620. What happened to President Harding?

621. Who succeeded Harding? 622. What scandals came to light? 623. How did the President and Congress get along? 624. Tell about the Presidential communications. 625. Who was elected?

INDEX

- Abolition Movement 182.
 Acadians, 90.
 Acts of Trade, 94.
 Adams, John, 147.
 Adams, John Quincy, 177.
 Alabama claims, 248.
 "Alabama" and "Kearsage," 284.
 Alaska purchase, 240.
 Albany Convention, 88.
 Albemarle Colony, 60.
 Alien labor law, 254.
 Alien and Sedition laws, 148.
 Amendments to Constitution, 288, 275, 805.
 Andre, Major, 129.
 Andros, Sir Edmund, 46, 54.
 Anti-trust law, 270.
 Appomattox, 285.
 Argall, 89.
 Arkansas, 70.
 Arnold, Benedict, 107, 128, 129.
 Arthur, Chester, 270.
 Assembly, The first, 40.
 Atlantic cable, 241.
 Articles of Confederation, 187.
 Aztecs, 28.
 Balboa, 21.
 Baltimore, Lord, 57, 58, 75.
 Baltimore founded, 59.
 Bank of U. S., 182.
 Barry, Com. John, 127.
 Battles;
 Antietam, 220; Argonne, The, 298;
 Belleau Wood, 281; Bennington, 118;
 Bunker Hill, 108; Braddock's Defeat,
 90; Cantigny, 288; Concord, 103;
 Cowpens, 182; Chancellorsville, 228;
 Chateau Thierry, 289; Chattanooga,
 228; Chickamauga, 228; Fort William
 Henry, 91; Fort Moultrie, 108; Fred-
 ericksburg, 221; Germantown, 119;
 Gettysburg, 224, 225; Iuka and Cor-
 inth, 222; Kings Mountain, 181;
 Long Island, 118; Lake Erie, 164;
 Lexington, 101; Monmouth, 122;
 Murfreesboro, 222; Marne, 281, 290;
 New Orleans, 171; Plattsburg, 169;
 St. Mihiel, 292; Saratoga, 118;
 Swamp Light, 86; Shiloh, 215; San-
 tiago, 265; Ticonderoga, 101; Tren-
 ton, 115; Thames, 167; Vicksburg,
 226; Wilderness, 282.
 Bell, Alexander, 245.
 Berkely, Lord, 48.
 Blockade, The, 214.
 Boston Tea Party, 97.
 Boston Massacre, 96.
 Bradford, Gov. Wm., 81.
 Braddock, Gen., 89.
 Brazil, 16.
 Brown, John, raid, 202.
 Bryan, Wm. J., 262, 273, 278.
 Buchanan, Pres., 200, 203.
 Cabots, The, 17, 75.
 California, Capture of, 190.
 Calvert, Lord Baltimore, 57.
 Canada, invasion of, 107; commission
 to, 108.
 Canonius, 50, 55.
 Carolinas, The, 59, 60.
 Cartier, Jacques, 27, 74.
 Carteret Colony, 61.
 Carteret, Sir George, 48.
 Carroll, Charles, 108.
 Carpet Baggers, 239.
 Cathay, 7.
 Centennial, 1876, 244.
 Champlain, Samuel de, 29, 77.
 Charter Oak, 54.
 Chinese Exclusion, 254.
 Civil Service Reform, 254.
 Clark, George Rogers, 124.
 Clay, Henry, 207.
 Clayborne, 58.
 Clarendon Colony, 60.
 Cleveland, Grover, 258, 261.

- Colonization, 86.
 Columbus, Christopher, 8 to 16.
 Columbian Exposition, 259.
 Confederation, The, 186.
 Cornwallis, Gen., 116, 184.
 Coronado, 24.
 Cortez, Hernando, 76.
 Conference, Washington, 806.
 Congress, First, 98, 239.
 Constitution, Convention, 141; makers
 of, 142; provisions of, 142.
 "Constitution," The, 162.
 Coal, 241.
 Coolidge, Calvin, 809.
 Cotton gin, 145.
 Cumberland Road, 178.
 Ouster Massacre, 245.
 Dale, Governor, 40.
 Davis, Jefferson, 286.
 Declaration of Independence, 111.
 De Gama, Vasco, 16.
 De Leon, Ponce, 21.
 Detroit, 98.
 Dewey's Victory at Manila, 264.
 Diaz, Prest., 276.
 Dingley Bill, 262.
 Dongan, Gov. Thomas, 46, 47, 78.
 Draft, The, 284.
 Drake, Sir Francis, 81.
 Dred Scot Decision, 200.
 Dutch Exploration, 82, 56; East India
 Co., 42; trading posts, 48; govern-
 ors, 44.
 Duke of York, 56.
 Eastern Campaign, The, 228.
 Electoral troubles, 240; Commission,
 246; Count Laws, 255.
 Elizabeth, Queen, 24, 48.
 Embargo and Non-Intercourse Acts, 154.
 Emancipation Proclamation, 222, 238.
 English, in New York, 46; Governors,
 45; settlement, 56, 74; Puritans, 56;
 colonization, 85; explorations, 81.
 End of Colonization Period, 73.
 Erie Canal, 178.
 Envoys to Europe, 214.
 European War, 277.
 Farragut, Admiral, 216.
 Field, Cyrus, 241.
 Fire, The Chicago, 243.
 Florida, 56.
 Foch, Marshal, 281, 288, 291, 299.
 Foreign Affairs, 117.
 Fort Necessity, 88; Duquesne, 89; Ti-
 conderoga, 108; William Henry, 91;
 Moultrie, 108; McHenry, 170; Sum-
 ter, 209; Henry and Donelson, 215.
 "Forty-niners," The, 195.
 Frame of government, 68.
 Franklin, Benjamin, 89, 160.
 French settlements, 73, 74; colonization,
 85; explorations, 28; missionaries, 40.
 Free Soilers, 194.
 French and English claims, 85.
 Frobisher, Martin, 81.
 "Frolic and Wasp," 163.
 Gadsden Purchase, 198.
 Garfield, Prest., James A., 253.
 Gates, Gen., 181.
 Georgia, 62, 64.
 German Drives, 287.
 Germany defeated, 295.
 Gettysburg, Address, 229.
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 83.
 Goethals, Gen., 269.
 Grand Canon, 24.
 Grant, Gen. U. S., 226, 231, 232, 235,
 242, 244, 245, 250.
 "Great Eastern," The, 242.
 Greene, Gen., 182.
 Greenland, 6.
 Haiti, 12.
 "Half Moon," The, 82.
 Hale, Capt. Nathan, 114.
 Harding, Warren G., 805, 807.
 Hartford founded, 54.
 Harrison, William H., 187.
 Harrison, Benjamin, 256.
 Hayes, Rutherford B., 246, 255.
 Hawaii, Annexation of, 260.
 Henry, Patrick, 96.
 Hessians, 112.
 Hindenburg Line, 291.
 Holy Sepulchre, 10.
 Holy Alliance, 176.
 Howe, Gen., 104.
 House of Burgesses, 40, 56.
 Huerta, 276.
 Hudson, Henry, 82, 42, 78.
 Huguenots, 26.

- Hurons, The, 26.
- Iceland, 5.
- Immigration, 184, 307.
- Impeachment of Johnson, 239.
- Indians, 1, 5, 50, 182; massacres, 41; wars, 79, 81.
- Inventions, 196.
- Invasion of the North, 220.
- Interstate Commerce Law, 256.
- Iron-clad oath, 239.
- Iroquois Indians, 80.
- Intolerable Acts, 98.
- Jackson, Andrew, 181, 206.
- Jamestown, 36, 40, 56, 271.
- Jasper, Sergeant, 109.
- Jefferson, Thomas, 111, 150, 154, 157.
- Jogues, Father, 66.
- Joliet, 69, 70.
- Jones, John Paul, 128.
- Johnson, Andrew, 237, 238, 239.
- Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 199.
- "Kearsage," The, 284.
- Labrador, 17.
- Lachine Massacre, 82.
- Lafayette, Marquise de, 134, 159, 177.
- La Salle, 71, 72.
- Lee, Robert E., 219, 255.
- Lewis and Clark, 152, 271.
- Lincoln, Abraham, 201, 203, 209, 229, 236, 238, 239, 250.
- London and Plymouth Company, 36.
- Louisiana, 72, 150, 159.
- "Lusitania," sinking of, 283.
- Macdonough, Thos., 207.
- Madison, James, 161.
- Magellan, Ferdinand, 28.
- "Maine," The, 264.
- Marco Polo, 7.
- March to the Sea, 281.
- Marquette, Father, 68, 70, 74.
- Maryland, 57, 74.
- Massachusetts, 49, 54.
- Massachusetts Bay Colony, 81.
- Mason and Dixon Line, 63.
- Massasoit, 50, 55.
- Mayflower, 49; Compact, 49.
- "Merrimac" and "Monitor," 217.
- Mexico, 20, 209, 277.
- McKinley, Pres. Wm., 262, 266.
- Minute Men, 101.
- Minuet, Peter, 44, 46.
- Militia Mobilized, 279.
- Missouri Compromise, 175.
- Molly Pitcher, 121.
- Monroe, Pres. James, 172, 176.
- Montcalm, Gen., 92, 92.
- Marquette, Father, 68, 70.
- Narvaez, 28.
- Navigation Acts, 94.
- Nevada, 238.
- Newark founded, 48.
- New Albion, 32.
- New Amsterdam, 44, 45.
- New England, 49, 56.
- New Haven, 54.
- New Hampshire, 56.
- New Jersey, 48, 56, 114.
- New Netherlands, 43, 56, 59.
- New Mexico, 56.
- New Sweden, 59.
- New York, 56, 112.
- Northmen, 5, 6.
- Northwest Territory, 188, 140.
- Nullification Act, 181.
- Oglethorpe, Gen., 64.
- Ohio Company, 85, 151.
- Oklahoma, 257.
- Old Dominion, 41.
- Omnibus Bill, 197.
- Ordinance of 1787, 138.
- Oregon Country, 152, 192.
- Panama Canal, 260, 268.
- Pan-American Exposition, 267.
- Panle of 1837, 184; of 1873, 244; of 1907, 271.
- Patroons, 44.
- Peace Conference, 296.
- Peace Treaty, 303.
- Penn, William, 48, 60, 62.
- Pennsylvania, 60, 62, 74.
- Peninsular Campaign, 220.
- Perry, Oliver Hazard, 206.
- Pershing, Gen., 285, 292, 293.
- Pickets' Charge, 225.
- Pilgrims, 49.
- Pittsburgh, 88, 91.
- Plymouth, 49, 51, 56.
- Plymouth Company, 36.
- Pocahontas, 89.
- Port Royal, 83.

- Polk, Pres., 189.
 Powhatan, 88.
 Populists, 259.
 Postal Savings, 273.
 Privateers, 127.
 Puritans, 56, 127.
 Pure Food Law, 270.
 Quebec, 29; surrender of, 92; attack on, 107; Act, 98.
 — Railroads, 179, 244; riot, 246.
 Railroad Rates, 290.
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 83.
 Religious Toleration, 58.
 Revere, Paul, 101.
 Rhode Island, 55, 56.
 Roanoke Island, 83.
 Rolfe, John, 89.
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 268, 269, 270, 303.
 San Francisco Earthquake, 276.
 Santa Fe, 27, 36, 56.
 Santa Maria, 11.
 Salem, 51.
 Settlement, The First, 48.
 Sitting Bull, 245.
 Shays's Rebellion, 137.
 Sherman, Gen., 230, 236, 251, 255, 260.
 Slavery, 41, 175, 197.
 Smith, Capt. John, 87, 44.
 Spanish Explorers, 20.
 South America, 20, 175.
 Steamboat, 154.
 Star Spangled Banner, 170.
 States Admitted, 146, 172, 183, 194, 200, 256, 273.
 "Stonewall" Jackson, 224.
 Stamp Act, 95, 100; Repeal, 96.
 Starving Time, 88.
 St. Augustine founded, 26.
 Submarines, 283, 284, 286.
 Swedes in America, 94.
 Taft, Pres. Wm. H., 273.
 Tariff, 145, 182, 256, 261.
 Taylor, Zachary, 195.
 Telephone, The, 245.
 Texas, 187, 188.
 Tobacco, 40.
 Toleration Act, 59.
 Tories, 108, 109.
 Trusts, 267, 273.
 Trouble with Mexico, 279.
 Transportation problems, 178.
 Union Victory, 225.
 Uncle Tom's Cabin, 198.
 Utah admitted, 261.
 Van Buren, Martin, 183.
 Venezuelan Question, 261.
 Verrazani, 28, 42.
 Vespucci, Amerigo, 18, 75.
 Virginia Company, 86.
 Vikings, 5.
 Wampum, 5.
 Washington, George, 86, 88, 106, 116, 137, 142, 143, 144, 147, 149, 157, 232.
 Wars:
 Pequod, 79; King Philip, 79; Indian, 81, 99, 146, 148, 168; King William, 81, 99; Queen Anne, 82, 89; King George, 84, 99; French and Indian, 88, 89; Revolution, 101; 1812, 161; Mexican, 189; Civil, 209; Spanish, 204; World, 278.
 Webster, Daniel, 208.
 West Jersey, 48.
 Williams, Roger, 55, 56.
 Witchcraft, 51.
 Wilson, Woodrow, 275, 285, 295, 296, 303, 308.
 Wilson Tariff Bill, 261.
 X. Y. Z. Papers, 148.
 Yellow Fever, 247.
 Yorktown, 134.



05

